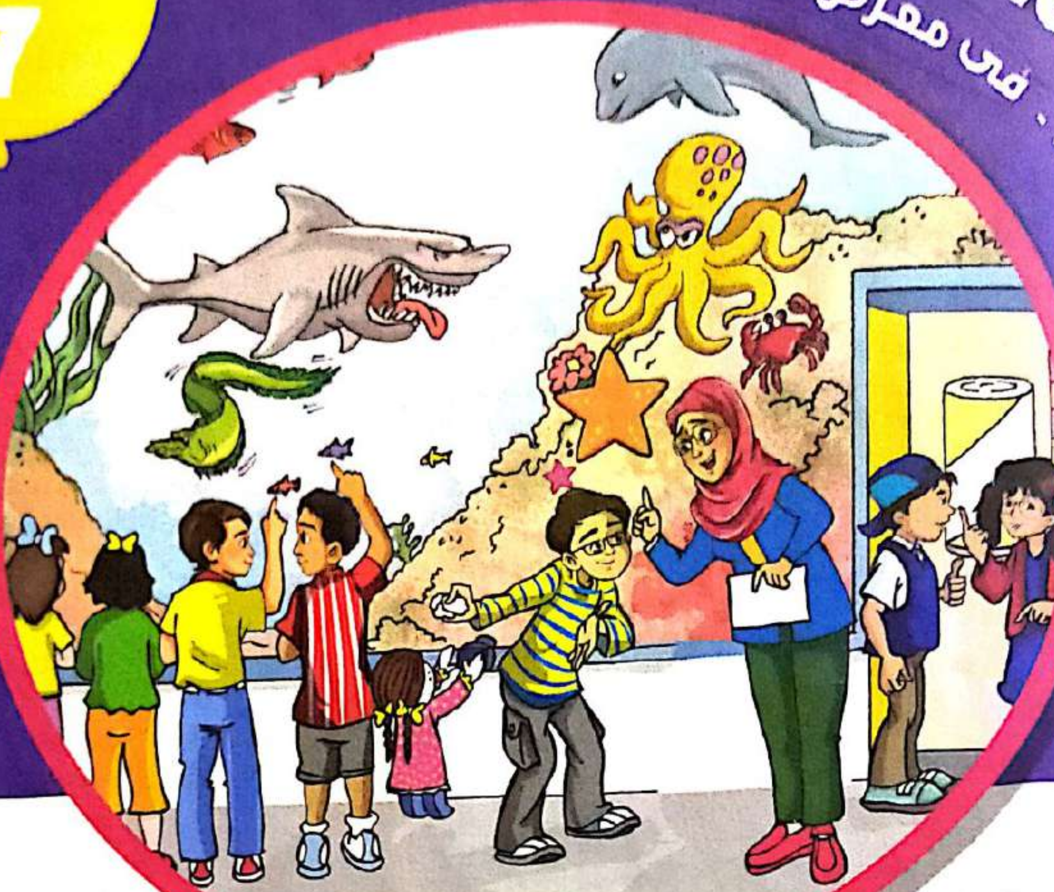
Unit 7

At the Aquarium

فى معرض الأحياء المائية



Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time
- Ask about wants. • السؤال عن الرغبات.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  - التعرف إلى المتحدثين فى محادثة.

Word Time
- Write sentences. • كتابة جمل.
- Read sentences. • قراءة جمل.
- Learn vocabulary: Marine animals and adjectives to describe them.
  - تعلم المفردات اللغوية: الحيوانات البحرية ووصفها.

Practice Time
- Express comparisons.
  - التعبير عن المقارنات.
- Learn comparatives. • تعلم المقارنات.

Phonics Time
- Distinguish between sounds of "ar & or".
  - التمييز بين صوتى "ar & or" .
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  - الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

Lesson 1

SB/ WB: P. (1)

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

aquarium	معرض الأحياء المائية	Which ...?	أي (للتخيير)...؟	all	كل
cute (adj.)	لطيف/جذاب	well	حسنًا	time	وقت
please	من فضلك	mind	عقل	okay	حسنًا
sure (adj.)	متأكد	great (adj.)	عظيم	cashier	صراف/موظف الحسابات
there	هناك				

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

bathroom	حمام	far (adj.)	بعيد
straight	مستقيمًا	left (adj.)	يسار
thanks	شكرًا		

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted	look for	يبحث عن	looked for

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	go	يذهب	went
make up	يقرر	made up	take	يأخذ	took
get	يحصل على	got			

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

I don't know.	أنا لا أعرف.	It's time to go.	حان وقت الذهاب.
Make up your mind.	اتخذ قرارك.	over there	هناك
Not really.	ليس كذلك.	No problem.	لا توجد مشكلة.

Characters of the conversation
شخصيات المحادثة


Father


Girl

Story of the conversation
قصة المحادثة

- The girl wants to buy a T-shirt, but she is not sure which one she wants. It's time to go, so her father asks her to make up her mind.

البنت تريد شراء تى شيرت ولكنها ليست متأكدة أى واحد تريد. حان وقت الذهاب؛ ولذلك يطلب منها والدها أن تقرر.

A Listen and repeat.
استمع وردد.

1


Which one do you want?
أى واحد تريدين؟


Oh, I don't know. They're all cute.
أوه، أنا لا أعرف. إنهم جميعا جذابون.

2


Well, it's time to go. Please make up your mind.
حسنا، حان وقت الذهاب. من فضلك قررى.


Um, okay. I'll take this one.
أمم، حسنا. سأخذ هذا.

3


Are you sure?
هل أنتِ متأكدة؟


Yes, I am.
نعم.

4


Great. Let's get it.
عظيم. هيا بنا نحصل عليه.


Dad, the cashier is over there.
أبى، الصراف/موظف الحسابات هناك.

B Listen and point to the speakers.
استمع وأشِر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner.
تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.

Language Functions

1. Asking someone about what they prefer: سؤال شخص ما عما يفضل:

Which ....? أي (للتخيير)..........؟

e.g.

A : Which one do you want? أي واحد تريدين؟

B : Oh, I don't know. They're all cute. أوه، أنا لا أعرف. إنهم جميعًا جذابون.

2. Asking someone to make a quick decision: الطلب من شخص ما أن يتخذ قرارًا سريعًا:

e.g.

A : Please make up your mind. من فضلك قرري.

B : Um, okay. I'll take this one. امم، حسنًا. سآخذ هذا.

Note

للإشارة للمفرد (القريب) :	للإشارة للمفرد (البعيد) :
This .... هذا/ هذه.....	That ..... ذلك/ تلك.....
e.g. • I'll take this one.	e.g. • I'll take that one.

3. Asking someone if they are sure of their choice: سؤال شخص ما عما إذا كان متأكدًا من اختياره:

e.g.

A : Are you sure? هل أنت متأكدة؟

B : Yes, I am. نعم.

4. Suggestion: الاقتراح:

Let's + (inf.) هيا بنا .... مصدر الفعل

e.g.

• Let's get it. هيا بنا نحصل عليه.

5. Asking about and giving directions: السؤال عن وإعطاء الاتجاهات:

e.g.

A : Excuse me. I'm looking for the bathroom. Is it far? معذرةً. أنا أبحث عن الحمام. هل هو بعيد؟

B : Not really. Go straight. It's on the left. ليس كذلك. سر في خط مستقيم. إنه على اليسار.

6. Thanking: الشكر:

e.g.

A : Thanks. شكرًا.

B : No problem. لا توجد مشكلة.

Check point

Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل

A : Which one do you want?
B : I don't (1) .... They're all cute.
A : It's time to go. Can you make up your (2) ....?
B : Um, okay. I'll take this (3) ....
A : (4) .... you sure?
B : Yes, I am.

D Review. Listen and repeat. استمع وردد

Excuse me. I'm looking for the bathroom. Is it far?
معذرة. أنا أبحث عن الحمام. هل هو بعيد؟

Not really. Go straight. It's on the left.
... سر في خط مستقيم. إنه على اليسار.



Thanks.
شكراً.

No problem.
... مشكلة.



- لاحظ أن حرفي (ch) في (Which) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).
- لاحظ أن حرف (k) في (know) لا ينطق "silent".
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) في (cute - excuse) ينطق /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرف (s) في (please - excuse) ينطق /z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرفي (th) في (this - there) ينطقان /ð/ (ذ).
- لاحظ أن حرفي (su) في (sure) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرفي (sh) في (cashier) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ أن حرفي (th) في (bathroom - thanks) ينطقان /θ/ (ث).
- لاحظ أن حرفي (gh) في (straight) لا ينطقان "silent".

Conversation Time
Exercise

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

Father : Which one do you want? (WB)

Daughter : Oh, I don't know. They are all (1)..........................

Father : Please, can you (2).......................... up your mind?

Daughter : OK. I'll (3).......................... this one.

Father : Good. (4).......................... is the cashier?

Daughter : He is over there.

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات التالية:

all – great – dress – red – cashier

Sarah went with her mother to the shop. She wanted to buy a (1).......... She couldn't choose because they were (2).......... cute. Her mother told her to get the (3).......... one. It was (4)..........

3 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hany is ten years old. He is in a new school. He has no friends. He wants to go to the bathroom. He doesn't know where the bathroom is. He asks a boy called Saif. Saif tells him to go straight because the bathroom is over there. Hany and Saif are friends now.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Hany is ten years old.	( )	( )
2. Hany wants to go to the library.	( )	( )
3. Hany and Saif are friends now.	( )	( )

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where does Hany want to go?

5. Who is Hany's friend? ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتيــة لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. take – I – one – will – this. 2018

....

2. over – there – The – is – cashier. 2019

....

3. one – he – want – Which – does? 2019

....

4. looking – What – for – are – you? 2018

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:



6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you sure/

2. It s on the left/

Word Time

Lesson 2

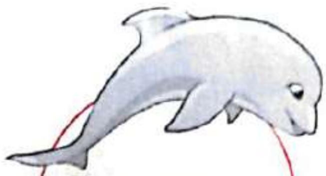
KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

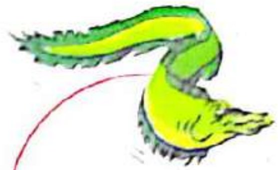
Marine animals: حيوانات بحرية:



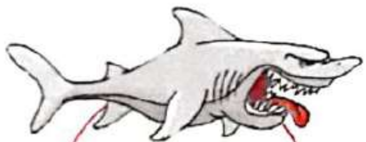
whale
حوت



dolphin
دلفين



eel
ثعبان البحر



shark
سمكة القرش



octopus
أخطبوط



crab
كابوريا

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

big (adj.)	كبير الحجم	small (adj.)	صغير الحجم
fast (adj.)	سريع	slow (adj.)	بطيء
thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	orange juice	عصير برتقال
favourite (adj.)	مفضل	paper	ورق
sorry (adj.)	آسف		

تصريف الأفعال Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs
أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
like	يحب	liked

Irregular verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
be (am-is/are)	يكون	was/were	throw	يلقى (يرمى)	threw
have	يملك/يتناول	had			

Expressions and phrases
تعبيرات وعبارات

How about ....?	ما رأيك فى /ماذا عن..؟	Really?	[illegible]
It's my favourite.	إنها المفضلة لدي.	Pardon me?	عذرًا. أعد ما قلت.

A Listen and repeat.

استمــع وردد.

1 whale
2 dolphin
3 eel
4 shark
5 octopus
6 crab
7 big
8 small
9 fast
10 slow

B Point and say the words.

أشـــر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

					Answers
1.	dolphin	octopus	vet	eel	
2.	whale	turtle	eel	crab (WB)	
3.	like	throw	octopus	have	
4.	fast	slow	big	whale	
5.	shark	paper	dolphin	eel	

C Listen and point. استمع واشر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. استمع واشر إلى المتحدثين.



Mona : Mm. I'm thirsty.

Kareem : What are you going to have?

ماذا سوف تتناول؟

Mona : I'm going to have some orange juic
How about you?

سوف أتناول بعضا من عصير البرتقال، ماذا عنك؟

Kareem : Hm. I don't know.



Boy 1 : Which fish do you like?

Boy 2 : I like the blue fish.

السمكة ذات اللون الأزرق.

Boy 1 : Really? I like the red fish. It's my favourite

أنا أحب السمكة ذات اللون الأحمر. إنها المفضلة لدي.



Teacher : Joe! Don't throw paper.

Joe : Pardon me?

Teacher : Don't throw paper.

Joe : Sorry.

Language Functions

1. Expressing physical states: التعبير عن الحالات الجسدية:

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to "be" (am/is/are) + adj. (صفة).

e.g.

- I'm thirsty. أنا عطشان.

2. Giving instructions: إعطاء التعليمات:

لإعطاء التعليمات بعدم فعل شيء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ..... .

e.g.

A : Don't throw paper. لا تلق (ترم) الورق.

B : Sorry. آسف.

Note

Wh- questions with (What) in the future with "going to":

- السؤال بأداة الاستفهام "What" فى زمن المستقبل باستخدام "going to":

• للسؤال عما سيحدث فى المستقبل:

What am → I / is → he/she/it/ اسم مفرد / are → we/you/they/ اسم جمع → going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....?

• للإجابة:

I → am / He/She/It → is / We/You/They → are → going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... .

e.g.

A : What are you going to have?

B : I'm going to have some orange juice.

Unit 7

Check point

Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات التالية:

favourite - some - restaurant - going - paper

Kareem and Mona are very hungry. They will go to a (1) .... Kareem is (2)............ to have some rice and orange juice. Mona is going to have (3)............ fish and a cup of tea. Mona's (4)............ food is fish.

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات.

ارجع الى الصفحات (31 - 29) بالكتاب المدرسي.



Bb ....



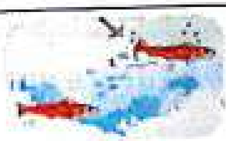
Cc ....



Dd ....



Ee ....



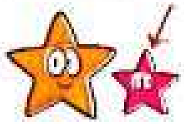
Ff ....



Oo ....







Ss ....



Ww ....



لاحظ أن حرف (h) فى (whale) لا ينطق "silent".

لاحظ أن حرفى (ph) فى (dolphin) ينطقان /f/ (ف).

لاحظ أن حرفى (sh) فى (shark - fish) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).

لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (thirsty - throw) ينطقان /θ/ (ث).

لاحظ أن حرف (c) فى (octopus - crab) ينطق /k/ (ك).

لاحظ أن حرف (g) فى (orange) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).

Word Time
Exercise

① Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:
ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

					Answers
1.	paper	thirsty	hungry	favourite	
2.	shark	crab	dolphin	school	
3.	eel	shark	shop	octopus	
4.	fast	aquarium	big	small	
5.	have	know	orange	throw	

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Don't .... paper.
   a) throw b) threw c) throwing d) thrown
2. I'm going to have some orange ....
   a) water b) soup c) juice d) food
3. .... are you going to have?
   a) What b) When c) Who d) Which
4. The shark is a .... sea animal.
   a) slow b) fast c) small d) thin

③ Read the passage and answer the questions:
اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, we visited the aquarium. I went there with my friends, Heba and Dina. We went by car. We saw a dolphin, a whale, a crab and an eel. The dolphin is big. The whale is fast. The crab is small and the eel is thin. We spent a nice time there. We went back home at five o'clock.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Yesterday, we visited the aquarium.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The whale isn't fast.	(..........)	(..........)
3. We went by bus.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did they see at the aquarium?

....

5. When did they go back home?

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1. throw - paper - Don't .

....

2. you - like - Do - sharks?

....

3. the - I - fish - red - like.

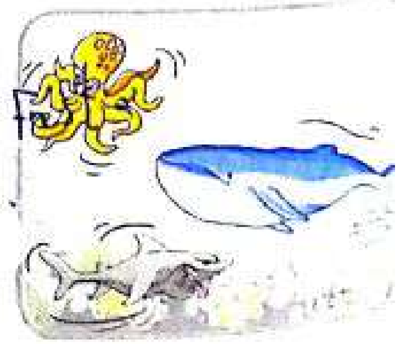
....

4. you - Which - do - fish - like?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:



معلومة من يونيسف

أغسل يدى قبل وبعد الذهاب إلى الحمام

Practice Time

Lesson 3

SB/ WB: P. (3)

استمـــع وردد.

A **Listen and repeat.**

The whale is bigger than the dolphin.

big → bigger
fast → faster
small → smaller
slow → slower

STRUCTURE

الصفات:

Adjectives:

- تستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم (شخص، حيوان، شىء.....إلخ) وغالبًا ما تأتى قبله أو بعد v. to "be" (am - is - are):

e.g.
- The small crab runs on the beach.
- The crab is small.

مقارنة الصفات:

Comparison of adjectives:

• المقارنة بين اثنين:

- **Comparative:**

- عنــد المقارنــة بين (شخصين، حيوانين، شيئين ... إلخ) يزيد أحدهمــا عــن الآخر فى صفــة ما قصــيرة (ذات مقطع واحد):

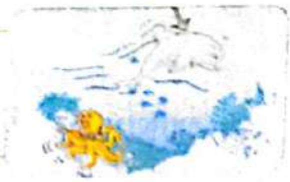
adjective (الصفة) + er + than

- small → smaller than
- fast → faster than
- slow → slower than

e.g.
- The shark is smaller than the whale.



e.g.
- The dolphin is faster than the octopus.



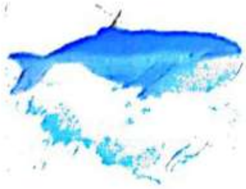
e.g.
- The crab is slower than the eel.



I go to

... الصفة القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك ...
نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "er"

- big ▸ bigger than
- thin ▸ thinner than
- fat ▸ fatter than



e.g. • The whale is bigger than the dolphin.



e.g. • The eel is thinner than the shark.



e.g. • The octopus is fatter than the crab.

Note

- Which .....? أو (للتخيير)......؟



e.g.

A: **Which** one is faster, the octopus or the shark?

B: **The shark** is faster than the octopus.



e.g.

A: **Which** one is bigger, the whale or the dolphin?

B: **The whale** is bigger than the dolphin.

Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

2017

1. The eel is .... than the octopus.

   a) faster b) fast c) a fast d) the fast

إدارة الزاوية الحمراء 2019

2. The crab is .... the shark.

   a) slow b) slower c) slower than d) slowest

إدارة زفتى 2017

3. The octopus is bigger .... the crab.

   a) this b) than c) then d) that

إدارة غرب المحلة الكبرى 2018

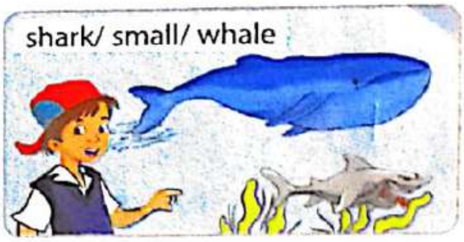
4. .... one is faster, the eel or the shark?

   a) Who b) Which c) Where d) When

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner. استمع وردد. ثم تدرب مع زميل.



① The crab is slower than the dolphin.



② The shark is .... than the whale.



③ The whale is bigger .... the eel.

octopus/ big/ crab



4. The octopus is biggerthan the crab.

eel/ small/ shark



5. the eel smaller than the shark.

dolphin/ fast/ octopus



6. thedolphin is faster than octopus

C Look at page 2. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

افتح صفحة 2 بالكتاب المدرسى، أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1 The crab is slower than the dolphin.



S2 The whale is bigger than the dolphin.



Practice Time

Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The whale is .... than the crab.
   a) big b) bigger c) biggest d) the biggest
2. The crab is .... than the whale.
   a) faster b) bigger c) smaller d) fatter
3. .... one is bigger, the dolphin or the octopus?
   a) Where b) Which c) When d) What
4. The eel is .... than the dolphin.
   a) bigger b) thinner c) fatter d) faster

2 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mona and Hana are on a field trip[1] at the aquarium. There are lots of different[2] kinds of marine animals. Here's a whale, over there is a dolphin, and there's a shark near the eel. This fish is fast, but this one is slow. This is an octopus, and this is a crab. The crab is smaller than the octopus.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mona and Hana see the lion.	( )	( )
2. The shark is near the eel.	( )	( )
3. They see many wild animals.	( )	( )

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where do Mona and Hana go?
5. Why do they go there?

(1) field trip: رحلة ميدانية (2) different: مختلف

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

رتب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. fast - whale - is - The.

....

2. see - dolphin - you - a - Did?

....

3. is - than - faster - The shark - the octopus.

....

4. slower - is - the whale - the - eel - than?

....

4 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:



5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. is there a crab near the eel/

....

2. I m looking for the bathroom/

....

معلومة من يونيسف

أغسل باطن وظهر يدى وبين الأصابع للتخلص من الجراثيم التى لا أراها

Phonics Time

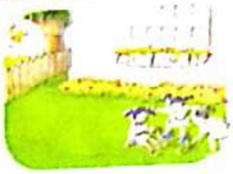
Lesson 4

SB/ WB: P. (4)

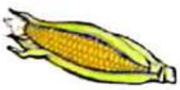
Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى نطق الكلمات الآتية ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق "or" و "ar":

ar /ɑ:/

 barn حظيرة	 farm مزرعة	 yard فناء	 shark سمكة القرش
 dark مظلم	 smart ذكى	 hard صعب	 lizard سحلية
 garden حديقة	 cards لعبة الكوتشينة	 part جزء	 car سيارة

or /ɔ:/

 corn ذُرة	 fork شوكة	 storm عاصفة	 horn قرن حيوان
 form استمارة	 horse حصان	 story قصة	 popcorn فيشار

Vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية

sky	سماء	wind
today (WB)	اليوم	grandpa (WB)
peas (WB)	بازلاء	across (WB)
the evening (WB)	المساء	house (WB)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs
أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
look at	ينظر إلى	looked at	visit	يزور	visited
live	يعيش	lived	chase	يطارد	chased
rain	تمطر	rained	play	يلعب	played
listen	يستمع	listened			

Irregular verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	blow	تهب	blew
make	يصنع	made	grow	يزرع/ينمو	grew

Check point

Listen and circle:
استمع وضع دائرة:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. barn – farm
ادارة طما 2018

b. corn – horn
ادارة سنورس 2018

c. yard – hard
ادارة اطسا 2018

A Listen and repeat.



ar /ɑ:/



barn



farm



yard



or /ɔ:/



corn



fork



storm

B Does it have ar or or? Listen and circle.

هل تحتوى الكلمة على "or" أو "ar"؟ استمع وضع دائرة.

1. shark **2.** horn **3.** fork

4. dark **5.** smart **6.** form

1. ar or **2.** ar or **3.** ar or

4. ar or **5.** ar or **6.** ar or

Unit 7

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

را الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور، ثم استمع.

1. Salim had a farm. One day there was a storm.
2. The sky was dark, but Salim was smart. He put the corn in the barn.
3. But the wind blew very hard.
4. Look at the corn in the yard!



معلومة من يونيسف

كل يوم أتناول الفاكهة

المليئة بالفيتامينات التى تحمينى من الأمراض مثل:



Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle: استمع وضع دائرة:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. lizard – garden b. dark – card c. horn – horse

إدارة وسط 2018 إدارة الجيوب 2019 إدارة المنتزه 2019

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

					Answers
1.	red	sky	green	white	
2.	grandpa	visit	listen	chase	
3.	farm	garden	barn	storm	
4.	pan	spoon	fork	yard	
5.	dark	have	smart	hard	

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات التالية:

إدارة الـسطة 2018

(WB)

eat – barn – grows – chased – lizard

Today, we visited our grandpa's farm. He (1)................... peas and corn in the yard. His horse lives in a big, red (2)................... A small green (3)................... lives there, too. We (4)................... it across the garden.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. the - dark - Was - sky?

....

2. is - Where - corn - the?

....

3. blew - hard - The - very - wind.

....

4. corn - puts - yard - the - He - the - in.

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:



Unit 7
Revision

Conversation Time

[illegible]

Father : Which one do you want?

Girl : Oh, I don't know. They're all cute.

- أوه، لا أعرف. إنهم جميعا [illegible].

Father : Well, it's time to go. Please make up your mind.

- حسناً، حان وقت الذهاب. من فضلك قرري.

Girl : Um, okay. I'll take this one.

- نعم، حسناً، سآخذ هذا.

Father : Are you sure?

- هل أنت متأكدة؟

Girl : Yes, I am.

- نعم.

Father : Great. Let's get it.

- عظيم، هيا بنا نحصل عليه.

Girl : Dad, the cashier is over there.

- أبي، الصراف/موظف الحسابات هناك.

Word Time

whale حوت	**dolphin** دلفين	**eel** ثعبان البحر
shark سمكة القرش	**octopus** أخطبوط	**crab** كابوريا
big كبير الحجم	**small** صغير الحجم	**fast** سريع
slow بطيء		

Practice Time

Comparison of adjectives:

مقارنة الصفات:

- Comparative:

- المقارنة بين اثنين:

- عند المقارنة بين (شخصين، حيوانين، شيئين ... إلخ) يزيد أحدهما عن الآخر فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد):

adjective (الصفة) + er + than



e.g. • The crab is slower than the dolphin.

- لاحظ عند انتهاء الصفة القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "er":



e.g. • The octopus is bigger than the crab.

Phonics Time

ar /ɑ:/		or /ɔ:/	
barn	حظيرة	corn	ذرة
farm	مزرعة	fork	شوكة
yard	فناء	storm	عاصفة
shark	سمكة القرش	horn	قرن حيوان
dark	مظلم	form	أستمارة
smart	ذكى	horse	حصان
hard	صعب	story	قصة
lizard	سحلية	popcorn	فيشار
garden	حديقة		
cards	لعبة الكوتشينة		
part	جزء		
car	سيارة		

Writing Time

Answered Examples

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل.

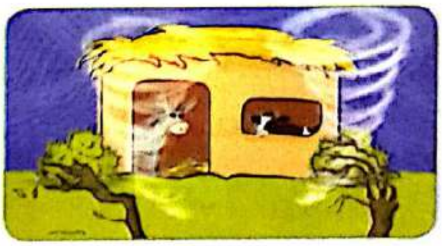
هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a) A girl and her father are at the shop. The girl wants to buy a T-shirt. She likes the yellow one. Her father wants to go.



b) I like sea animals. The eel is very thin. The dolphin is bigger than the eel. The octopus has eight arms.



c) Last Friday, I visited my grandpa's farm. The wind blew very hard. The sky was dark. The donkey and the cow were in the barn.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

معرض الأحياء المائية	....	صراف/ موظف حسابات	....
عقل	....	عظيم	....
لطيف/ جذاب	....	متأكد	....
وقت	....	حان وقت الذهاب	....
اتخذ قرارك	....	حسنًا	....

Word Time

كابوريا	....	ثعبان البحر	....
أخطبوط	....	دلفين	....
حـوت	....	سمكة القرش	....
كبير الحجم	....	صغير الحجم	....
سريع	....	بطيء	....

Phonics Time

حظيرة	....	قرن حيوان	....
ذرة	....	عاصفة	....
لعبة الكوتشينة	....	ذكى	....
قصة	....	مظلم	....
صعب	....	استمارة	....
شوكة	....	حديقة	....

Workbook

Conversation Time

A Number the sentences in the correct order.



- 3 Well, it's time to go. Please make up your mind.
- 2 Oh, I don't know. They're all cute.
- 7 Great! Let's get it.
- 5 Are you sure?
- 4 Um, okay. I'll take this one.
- 6 Yes, I am.
- 8 Dad, the cashier is over there.
- 1 Which one do you want?

B Look and match.

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

- Which one do you want?
- I don't know.
- I'll take that one.
- I'll take this one.

Workbook
Word Time

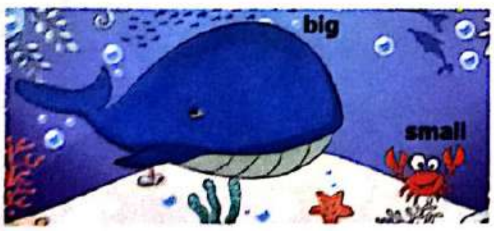
A Look. Then write the letter.



1. whale __d__ 2. eel __e__ 3. dolphin __c__

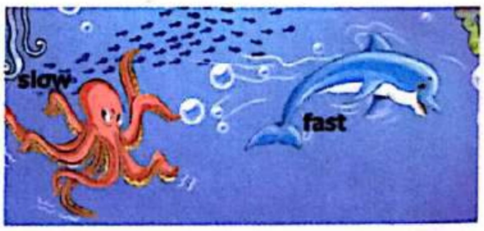
4. octopus __a__ 5. shark __b__ 6. crab __f__

B Look and write.

1.


a big whale

a small crab

2.


a slow octopus

a fast dolphin

C Your turn. Read and write.

Answers will vary

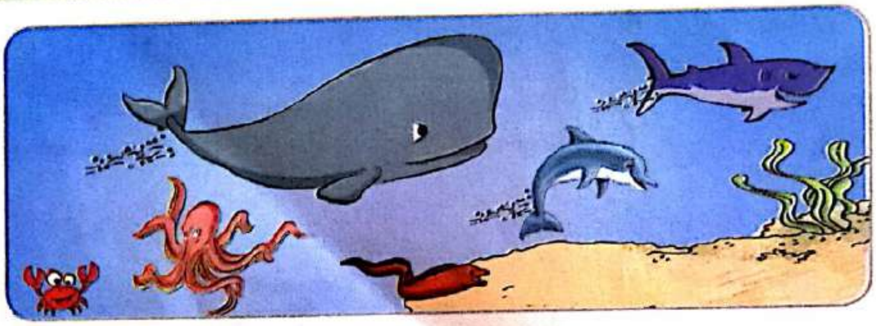


Do you like sharks? No, I don't.

Do you like dolphins? Yes, I do.

Workbook
Practice Time

A Read and write "True" or "False".



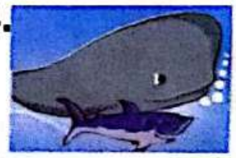
1. The octopus is slower than the dolphin. True
2. The dolphin is bigger than the shark. False
3. The eel is smaller than the whale. True
4. The whale is faster than the crab. True
5. The shark is slower than the octopus. False
6. The whale is bigger than the dolphin. True

B Look and write.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

1. fast — The shark is faster than the dolphin.
2. slow — The eel is slower than the octopus.
3. big — The eel is bigger than the crab.
4. small — The shark is smaller than the whale.

Workbook
Phonics Time

A **Circle and write ar or or. Then number the pictures.**

1. ar or — f_ar_m
2. ar or — c_or_n
3. ar or — st_or_m
4. ar or — b_ar_n
5. ar or — f_or_k
6. ar or — liz_ar_d

3

6

2

4

1

5


B **Fill in the blanks.**

dark	farm	horse	stories	barn	corn
cards	lizard	garden	yard	storm	popcorn



Today we visited Grandpa's _farm_ .
Grandpa grows peas and _corn_
in the _garden_ . His _horse_ lives in a big, red _barn_ .
A small, green _lizard_ lives there, too.
We chased it across the _dark_ .



There was a _storm_ in the evening. It rained and the sky was _dark_ . We played _cards_ and listened to _stories_ in the house. Grandpa made _popcorn_ .

Unit 7
Test 1

A. Listening

① Listen and circle: — استمع وضع دائرة: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. fork – form b. storm – popcorn c. smart – dark

② Listen and complete: — استمع وأكمل: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

Mona: Hello, Rana.

Rana : Hello. What's your favourite sea (1)..........................?

Mona: The (2).......................... . It's very big.

Rana : (3)......................... one is bigger, the whale or the dolphin?

Mona: The whale is (4).......................... than the dolphin.

Rana : Thank you.

B. Reading

③ Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

					Answers
1.	call	whale	eel	shark	
2.	yard	corn	barn	zoo	
3.	big	fast	cashier	slow	
4.	fish	cat	octopus	crab	
5.	faster	taller	sister	smaller	

Unit 7

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

املأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات التالية:

cow – animals – park – was – the

Last week, I went to Uncle Hassan's farm. I saw some (1)........ there. I saw a (2)................ and a horse. I enjoyed (3)........ weather there. It (4)................ fine. We spent a good time there.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

اقـرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, I went to the aquarium with my friends. We went there by bus. We saw some sea animals. The whale is bigger than the shark. The crab is smaller than the octopus. The dolphin is faster than the eel. We went back home at five o'clock. It was a nice day.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. I went to the aquarium with my family.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The crab is smaller than the octopus.	(..........)	(..........)
3. The shark is smaller than the whale.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How did you go to the aquarium?

....

5. Which one is faster, the dolphin or the eel?

....

C. Writing

⑥ Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. sure – Are – you?

2. live – the – Where – horse – does?

3. cashier – over – Dad. – the – is – there.

4. bigger – octopus – The – crab – the – than – is.

⑦ Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:



⑧ Punctuate the following: 2

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i didn't go to school on Monday/

2. How much is hala's camera/

Unit 7 Test 2

Selected from School Exams

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

استمع وضع دائرة: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. crab - shark (إدارة زفتى 2018)

b. part - card (إدارة العجمي 2019)

c. story - horse (إدارة أسوان 2019)

2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

Father: Which one do you want?

Mona : Oh, I don't know. They are (1)................ cute.

Father: Please (2)........................ you make up your mind?

Mona : Sure.

Father: Where is the (3)........................?

Mona : He is (4)........................ there.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

					Answers
1.	whale	lizard	shark	octopus	
2.	horse	donkey	cow	horn	
3.	dark	cute	like	nice	
4.	What	When	favourite	How	
5.	slower	fast	smaller	bigger	

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He put the corn in the .... إدارة أبو قرقاص 2018

   a) fork b) horn c) storm d) barn

2. Please .... up your mind. إدارة المنيا 2018

   a) make b) do c) get d) take

3. The octopus is .... than the dolphin. إدارة بنها 2017

   a) slower b) slow c) the slowest d) slowest

4. Nada is looking .... the bathroom. إدارة الفشن 2019

   a) in b) up c) for d) on

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: اقـرأ الفقرة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

إدارة بنى مزار 2018

Ahmed and Kareem went to the aquarium last Friday. They saw lots of animals there. The whale is the biggest animal. The crab is the smallest one. The octopus has eight arms. It is bigger than the eel. The shark is very dangerous[1]. It has sharp[2] teeth. Ahmed and Kareem liked the dolphin. It is their favourite animal.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. The octopus has 8 arms.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The shark has sharp teeth.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Ahmed and Kareem saw the lion.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Which animal is the biggest? ....

5. Where did Ahmed and Kareem go last Friday? ....

(1) dangerous خطير (2) sharp حادة

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات الآتية لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1. up – mind – Please – make – your. 2018

....

2. the – a horse – barn – was – There – in. 2018

....

3. you – are – to – going - have – What? 2019

....

4. smaller – Which – is – one? 2019

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

انظر واكتب فقرة من أربع جمل:

2018



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2019

1. We visited grandpa ali yesterday/

....

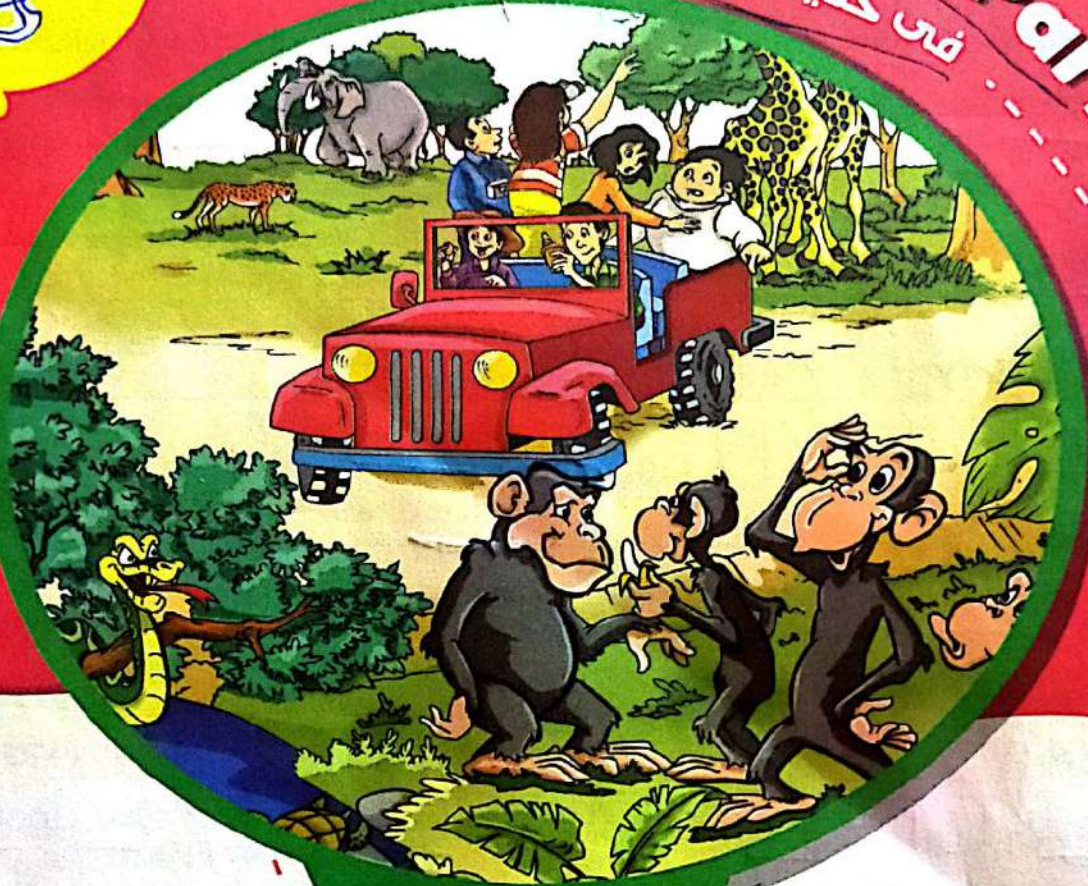
2019

2. did you go to your uncle's farm/

....

Unit 8

At the Safari Park
في حديقة السفارى



Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time
- Express excitement.
  - التعبير عن الإثارة والتشويق.
- Express opinions. • التعبير عن الآراء.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  - التعرف إلى المتحدثين في محادثة.

Word Time
- Write sentences. • كتابة جمل.
- Read sentences. • قراءة جمل.
- Learn vocabulary: Wild animals and adjectives to describe them.
  - تعلم المفردات اللغوية، الحيوانات البرية ووصفها.

Practice Time
- Ask questions concern superlatives.
  - تكوين أسئلة تتعلق بصيغة التفضيل.
- Learn superlatives.
  - تعلم صيغة التفضيل.

Phonics Time
- Distinguish between sounds of "ou & ow".
  - التمييز بين صوتي "ou & ow" .
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  - الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين
WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات
تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

Safari Park	حديقة سفاري	What ...?	ما/ماذا...؟	monkey
car	سيارة	quick	بسرعة	window
cute (adj.)	لطيف/جذاب	scary (adj.)	مخيف	

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

picture	صورة	careful (adj.)	حريص
mouse (WB)	فأر	lizard (WB)	سحلية

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
guess	يخمن	guessed	look	ينظر	looked
worry	يقلق	worried			

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
shut	يغلق	shut	hurt	يؤلم / يؤذى	hurt
go away	يذهب بعيدًا	went away	take	يأخذ	took
be (am-is/are)	يكون	was/were	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

Guess what!	خمن ماذا!	Don't worry.
It's going away.	إنه يبتعد.	Be very careful.

Characters of the conversation
شخصيات المحادثة



Mona



Dad



Kareem

Story of the conversation
قصة المحادثة

- Mona, Kareem and their father are at the Safari Park. There's a monkey on the car. Mona is excited, but Kareem is a little scared.
- منى وكريم ووالدهما فى حديقة السفارى . يوجد قرد على السيارة . منى متحمسة ولكن كريم خائف قليلًا.

A Listen and repeat.
استمـع وردد.

1



Dad! Guess what!

أبى! خمن ماذا!

What?

ماذا؟



2



There's a monkey on the car.

يوجد قرد على السيارة.

Quick! Shut the window.

بسرعة! أغلق الشباك.



3



Look! There it is.

انظر! ها هو.

Oh, it's cute.

أوه، إنه لطيف.



4



It's not cute. It's scary.

إنه ليس لطيف. إنه مخيف.

Don't worry. It won't hurt you.

لا تقلق. إنه لن يؤذيك.



5



Aw! It's going away.

أوو! إنه يبتعد.

B Listen and point to the speakers.
استمـع واشِر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with two other students.
تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع تلميذين آخرين.

Language Functions

1. Expressing excitement: التعبير عن الإثارة والتشويق:

e.g.

A: Dad! Guess what! — أبي! خمن ماذا!!

B: What? — ماذا؟!

A: There's a monkey on the car. — يوجد قرد على السيارة.

2. Expressing opinions: التعبير عن الآراء:

e.g.

A: Oh, it's cute. — أوه، إنه لطيف.

B: It's not cute. It's scary. — إنه ليس لطيفًا. إنه مخيف.

3. Soothing someone: تهدئة شخص ما:

e.g.

• Don't worry. It won't hurt you. — لا تقلق. لن يؤذيك.

Note

• عند النفى فى زمن المستقبل البسيط نضيف "not" بعد "will" و يليها مصدر الفعل (الفعل بدون إضافات) للتعبير عن شيء لن يحدث أو غير متوقع حدوثه فى المستقبل:

Subject (الفاعل) + will not (won't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل..... .

e.g.

• It won't hurt you.

Check point

Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

إدارة غرب المنصورة 2018

Hoda : Where is the monkey? (WB)

Maha : It's on the (1)............................ .

Hoda : Is it (2)............................ ?

Maha : Don't worry. It won't (3)............................ you.

Hoda : Is that a (4)............................ ?

Maha : Yes, it is.

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.

I'm going to take a picture.
سوف ألتقط صورة.

Be very careful!
كن حريصا جدا!



Oh, no!
أوه، لا!

I told you to be careful.
أخبرتك أن تكون حذرا.



- لاحظ ان حرف (h) فى(What) لا ينطق "silent".
- لاحظ ان حرفى(ck) فى (quick) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ ان حرفى(sh) فى (shut) ينطقان/ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ ان حرف (c) فى (scary - picture - careful) ينطق /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ ان حرفى(tu) فى (picture) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).

Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

2019

Ali : Dad! Guess what!

Dad: (1)..........................?

Ali : There's a (2).......................... on the car.

Dad: Quick! Shut the (3).. .

Ali : Is it (4)..?

Dad: No, it isn't. It is cute.

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

animals – books – family – lions – enjoyed

Last week, Fatma visited the zoo. She went with her (1).................... . They went there by car. Fatma saw lots of (2).................... . She saw monkeys, giraffes and (3)....................The family had lunch there. All of them (4).................... their visit very much.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

(WB) 2018

Mr. Magdy, his wife and the kids were at the Safari Park. Kareem saw the giraffe. It is very tall. Hoda loved the elephant and gave it potatoes. They all laughed at the monkeys. Monkeys ate bananas. The animals were happy. The kids were kind to the small animals. Mr. Magdy and his family were very happy.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1.	Mr. Magdy was at the zoo.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	Kareem saw the elephant.	(..........)	(..........)
3.	The giraffe is very short.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Hoda love?

....

5. What did the monkeys eat?

....

④ Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. your - animal – What – favourite - is? إدارة فطور 2018

....

2. Safari - visited - Park - the – We . إدارة عزبة البرج 2019

....

3. the – a – on – There's – car – monkey. إدارة دمياط 2019

....

4. take – to – Are – a – going – you – picture? إدارة طلخا 2018

....

⑤ Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة أخميم 2018



....

⑥ Punctuate the following:

1. what did she tell you .... إدارة المطرية 2018
2. It won t hurt you .... إدارة بركة السبع 2018

معلومة من يونيسف

الفاكهة الطازجة فى الفسحة أفضل لجسمى من الحلويات

Word Time

Lesson

SB/ WB: P.

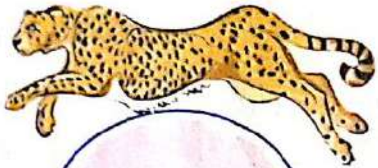
KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Wild animals: انات برية:



elephant
فيل



cheetah
فهد



giraffe
زرافة



snake
ثعبان



turtle
سلحفاة بحرية



chimpanzee
شمبانزى

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

tall (adj.)	طويل	short (adj.)	صير
fat (adj.)	سمين	thin (adj.)	حيف
please	من فضلك	birds	ليور
airplanes	طائرات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
try	يجرب	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	sit down	يجلس	sat down

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Try some.	جرب بعضا منه.	All right.	وهو كذلك.
Here you go.	تفضل.	It's delicious.	إنه لذيذ الطعم.

معلومة من يونيسف

هناك ٤ أشياء تضمن لك عظامًا وأسنانًا قوية وسليمة:

(الفيتامينات - الشمس -فيتامين د - الرياضة - الأسنان)

أكمل



١ احرص على تناول الأطعمة الغنية بـ..................

٢ تأكد من التعرض إلى..................

٣ الانتظام على ممارسة..................

٤ الانتظام على غسيل..................

Unit 8

A Listen and repeat.

استمـع وردد.

1 elephant
2 cheetah
3 giraffe
4 snake
5 turtle
6 chimpanzee
7 tall
8 short
9 fat
10 th

B Point and say the words.

أشـر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers	
1.	try	see	tall	sit	....	إدارة الدلنجات 2018
2.	giraffe	crab	monkey	chimpanzee	....	إدارة قليوب 2017
3.	elephant	giraffe	chimpanzee	bird	....	إدارة وسط 2018
4.	When	cheetah	turtle	giraffe	....	إدارة طهطا 2019
5.	short	snake	thin	tall	....	إدارة نجع حمادى 2017

C Listen and point. استمع وأشِر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمـع وأشـر إلـى المتحدثيـن.



Boy : Hey, mum! Did you see the chimpanzees?
- مهلا، أمي! هل رأيتي الشمبانزي؟

Mother : Yes, I did. Be careful. Please sit down.
- نعم، رأيته. كن حريصا. من فضلك أجلس.

Boy : Sure.
- بالتأكيد.



Friend : Try some. - جرب بعض منه.
Driver : All right. - وهو كذلك.
Friend : Here you go. - تفضل.
Driver : Hey! It's delicious. - هاي! إنه لذيذ الطعم.



Man : What are you looking at? - عما تنظر؟
Woman : I'm looking at the birds. - انظر إلى الطيور.
Man : Are there any airplanes? - هل يوجد أي طائرات؟
Woman : No, there aren't. - لا، لا يوجد.

Language Functions

1. Encouraging someone to have something: حث شخص على تناول شيء ما:

e.g.

A: Try some. جرب بعضاً منه.

B: All right. وهو كذلك.

2. Offering something: عرض (تقديم) شيء ما:

e.g.

A: Here you go. تفضل.

B: Hey! It's delicious. هاي! إنه لذيذ الطعم.

3. Asking about the existence of something: السؤال عن وجود شيء ما :

Are there ....? هل يوجد (للجمع)......؟

e.g.

A : Are there any airplanes? هل يوجد أي طائرات؟

B : No, there aren't. لا. لا يوجد.

Check point

Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

2017

turtle – cute – cheetah – Park – giraffe

Last Friday was a holiday. We visited the Safari (1)............................ . We saw a l[...] of animals. The (2)............................ was very tall. The (3)............................ was very fa[...] The monkey was (4)............................ . The snake was scary. It was a good day.

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات

انظر إلى الصفحات (29 - 31) بالكتاب المدرسي.




C c



Ee



Ff

....



Gg




S s

....





T t

....



- لاحظ ان حرفى (ph) فى (elephant) ينطقان /f/ (ف).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (ch) فى (cheetah /chimpanzee) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (sh) فى (short) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (th) فى (thin) ينطقان /θ/ (ث).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (gh) فى (right) لا ينطقان "silent".
- لاحظ ان حرفى (ci) فى (delicious) ينطقان/ʃ/ (ش).

Unit 8

Word Time
Exercise

① Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	snake	airplane	turtle	cheetah	Lion
2.	delicious	fat	happy	go	Sad
3.	giraffe	tall	fat	thin	Small
4.	scary	cute	fast	elephant	tall
5.	did	sit	saw	had	....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What are you .... at?
   a) look b) looks c) looked d) looking
2. The elephant is a .... animal.
   a) biggest b) big c) bigger d) bigger than
3. The .... has a long neck.
   a) elephant b) monkey c) giraffe d) crab
4. Be ...., mum. It's scary.
   a) careless b) delicious c) thin d) careful

③ Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Ahmed read a book about the Safari Park. He knew a lot of animals that live there. He read that the cheetah is the fastest animal. The elephant is the fattest animal and the giraffe is the tallest one. The turtle is slower than the cheetah. Ahmed was happy and he wanted to go to the Safari Park to see these animals.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Ahmed read a book about the aquarium.	(..........)	(..........)
2. The cheetah is faster than the turtle.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Ahmed wanted to go to the Safari Park.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did Ahmed read the book? ....

5. Which animal is the fattest? ....

④ Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

إدارة المنزلة 2018

1. It – delicious – Hey! – is.

....

2. there – turtles – any – Are?

....

إدارة القوصية 2019

3. you - the – Did – chimpanzee - see?

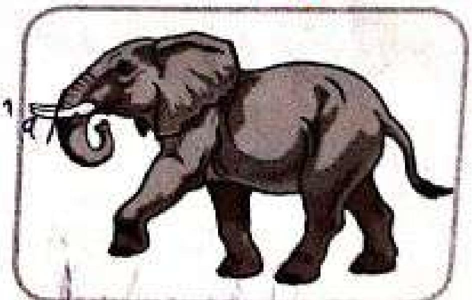
....

4. is - She – at – the monkey – looking.

....

⑤ Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة بلقاس 2018



معلومة من يوليسف

أشجع عائلتى وأصدقائى على تناول طبق صحى وممارسة الرياضة كل يوم

Practice Time

استمـع وردد.

A Listen and repeat.

A : Which one is the tallest?

B : The giraffe is the tallest.

tall	→	tallest	short	→	shortest
fat	→	fattest	thin	→	thinnest
fast	→	fastest	slow	→	slowest

STRUCTURE

Adjectives:

الصفات:

- تستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم (شخص، حيوان، شيء.....إلخ) وغالبًا ما تأتى قبله أو بعد v. to "be" (am - is - are):

e.g.
- The tall giraffe eats leaves.
- The giraffe is tall.

Comparison of adjectives:

مقارنة الصفات:

- Comparative:

المقارنة بين اثنين:

- عند المقارنة بين (شخصين، حيوانين، شيئين .... إلخ) يزيد أحدهما عن الآخر فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد):

adjective (الصفة) + er + than

e.g.
- The monkey is shorter than the giraffe.
- The elephant is bigger than the cheetah.

- Superlative:

صيغة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة):

- عند المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) نضيف "the" قبل الصفة و نضيف "est" بعدها:

the + adjective (الصفة) + est

- tall → the tallest
- fast → the fastest
- short → the shortest
- slow → the slowest

e.g. • The giraffe is the tallest.



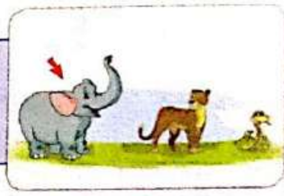
e.g. • The monkey is the shortest.



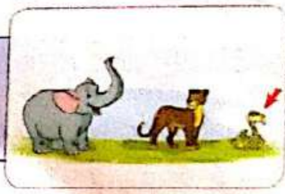
- لاحظ عند انتهاء الصفة القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "est" :

• fat → the fattest thin → the thinnest big → the biggest

e.g. • The elephant is the fattest.



e.g. • The snake is the thinnest.



- Which ...?

- أي (للتخيير)........؟

- السؤال بـ "أي" بمعنى: أي واحد لديه هذه الصفة العليا (صيغة التفضيل):

Which one is the + adjective (الصفة) + est ?

e.g.
A : **Which** one is the fastest?
B : **The cheetah** is the fastest.



e.g.
A : **Which** one is the slowest?
B : **The turtle** is the slowest.



Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which one is the ………………………? (الخاطر الخيرية 2017)
   a) fat b) fatter c) fattest d) the fat
2. The giraffe is ……………………… tallest animal.
   a) that b) the c) than d) then
3. The turtle ……………………… the slowest animal.
   a) are b) were c) is d) has
4. ……………………… one is the thinnest? (مع حمادى 2017)
   a) Which b) When c) Where d) Who

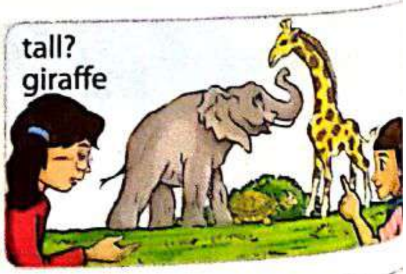
B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميل.

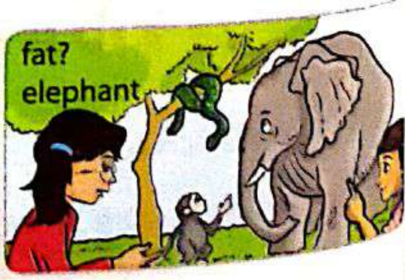
1. Which one is the shortest?
   The chimpanzee is the shortest.



2. ……Which…… one is the tallest?
   The giraffe is the ……tallest…… .
   animals

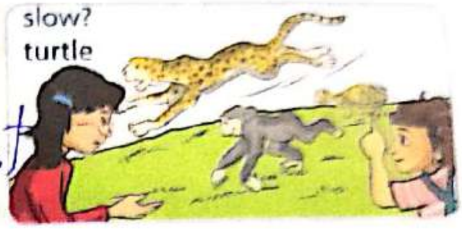


3. ……Which…… is the fattest?
   The elephant is ……fattest…… .



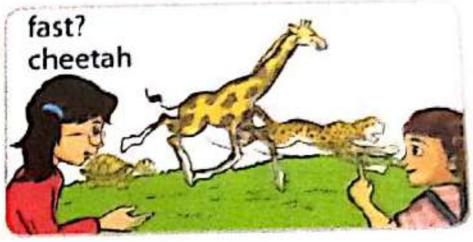
4. Which one is the slowest?

the turtle is the slowest



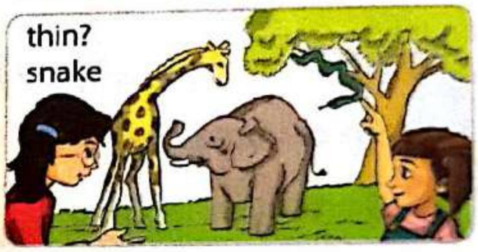
5. which one .... ?

The cheetah is the fastest.



6. .... ?

....



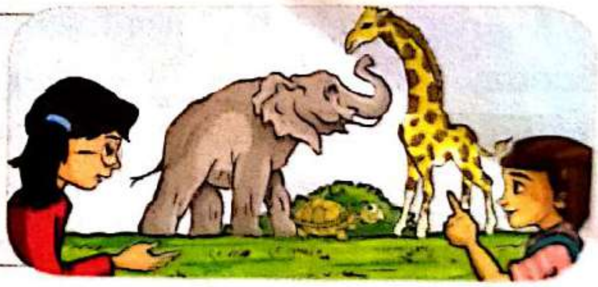
C Look at page 6. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر صفحة 6 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1 Which one is the tallest?

S2 The giraffe is the tallest.



Practice Time

Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is the slowest animal.
   a) giraffe b) snake c) monkey d) turtle
2. A: .... one is the fastest? B: The cheetah. 2018
   a) Which b) When c) Who d) Whose
3. The .... is the biggest animal. 2019
   a) chimpanzee b) lion c) elephant d) snake
4. The snake is the .... animal. 2018
   a) thin b) thinner c) thinnest d) thinner than

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Mona, I like my uncle Ali and he likes me. He is a doctor. Last Sunday, I visited him in Giza. After we had lunch, my uncle took me to the zoo. We went there in his car. We saw many animals there. The giraffe is the tallest. The turtle is the slowest. We took a lot of pictures. It was a nice day.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Uncle Ali is a doctor.	(....✓....)	(....✗....)
2. Mona and her uncle went to the zoo by bus.	(............)	(....✓....)
3. After lunch, Mona went to the library.	(............)	(....✓....)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Mona do last Sunday? ....
5. Which animal is the slowest? is turtle ....

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. is – cheetah – The – fastest – the.

....

2. the snake – Is – animal - a thin?

....

3. one – tallest – Which – is – the? (WB)

....

4. tallest – The – animal – is – giraffe – the.

....

4 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة قليوب 2019



5 Punctuate the following:

1. the cheetah is a fast animal/

إدارة كفر شكر 2018

....

2. which one is the fattest/

إدارة مطاي 2018

....

معلومة من يوليسف

احمي نفسي من الأمراض بتناول الفاكهة مرتين في اليوم. مثل: البرتقال والموز والتفاح والخوخ

Phonics Time

Lesson

SB/ WB: P.

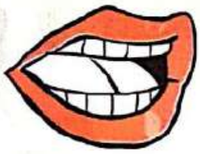
Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى نطق الكلمات الآتية ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق "ow" و "ou":

ou /aʊ/


house منزل


mouse فأر


mouth فم


cloud سحابة


out خارج


couch أريكة (كنبة)


shout يصيح


trout سمكة السلمون


mountain جبل

ow /aʊ/


brown بنى


gown فستان واسع


town مدينة صغيرة


cow بقرة


owl بومة


clown مهرج


down أسفل


flower زهرة

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

snow جليد	home
silly (adj.) سخيف	little (adj.)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Regular verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	start	يبدأ	started
shout	يصيح	shouted			

أفعال غير منتظمة

Irregular verbs

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met

Check point

Listen and circle:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. shout - trout
إدارة نجع حمادى 2017

b. house - cloud
إدارة الفشن 2018

c. town - down
إدارة أبو قرقاص 2019

A **Listen and repeat.** استمع وردد



ou /aʊ/



house



mouse



mouth



ow /aʊ/



brown



gown



town

B Do they both have the same vowel sound? Listen and circle ✓ or ✗.

كلتا الكلمتين بهما نفس صوت الحرف المتحرك؟ استمع وضع دائرة حول ✓ أو ✗.

1. cloud, mouse ✓ ✗
2. cow, snow ✓ ✗
3. out, owl ✓ ✗
4. couch, home ✓ ✗
5. clown, town ✓ ✗
6. down, shout ✓ ✗

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

أ الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور. ثم استمع.

1. A silly little mouse lived in a big house.
2. She went to town in an evening gown.
3. She met a brown trout and started to shout.
4. "Please don't shout, little mouse," said the trout.



Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. cloud - out b. brown - clown c. home - snow

إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2019 إدارة شرق 2018 إدارة شربين 2018

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	house	start	town	home	
2.	cow	snake	mouse	gown	
3.	shout	live	house	go	
4.	to	in	go	by	
5.	went	met	visited	live	

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

إدارة السنطة 2018

shout – town – home – trout – cloud (WB)

A silly little mouse lived in a big house. It went to (1)................ in an evening gown to buy a cake. It met a brown (2)................ and started to shout. The trout told it not to (3)................ . It bought the cake and went back (4)................ at night.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. did - she - How - to - town - go?

....

2. meet - a - you - Did - brown - trout?

....

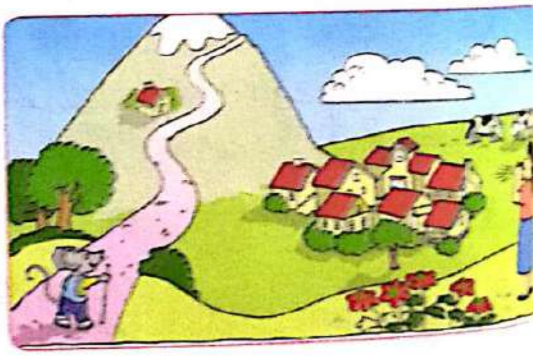
3. don't - Please - , little mouse - shout.

....

4. little - house - lived - mouse - A - in - a - big.

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

....

....

Unit 8
Revision

Conversation Time

Mona : Dad! Guess what! — أبي! خمن ماذا؟!

Dad : What? — ماذا؟

Mona : There's a monkey on the car. — يوجد قرد على السيارة.

Kareem: Quick! Shut the window. Look! There it is. — بسرعة! أغلق الشباك. انظر! ها هو.

Mona : Oh, it's cute. — أوه، إنه لطيف.

Kareem: It's not cute. It's scary. — إنه ليس لطيف. إنه مخيف.

Dad : Don't worry. It won't hurt you. — لا تقلق. إنه لن يؤذيك.

Mona : Aw! It's going away. — أوو! إنه يبتعد.

Word Time

elephant فيل	**cheetah** فهد	**giraffe** زرافة
snake ثعبان	**turtle** سلحفاة بحرية	**chimpanzee** شمبانزى
tall طويل	**short** قصير	**fat** سمين
thin نحيف		

Practice Time

• Superlative:

• صيغة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة):

• عند المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) نضيف "the" قبل الصفة ونضيف "est" بعدها:

the + adjective (الصفة) + est

e.g.

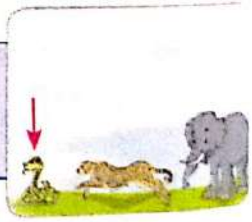
• The turtle is the slowest.



• لاحظ عند انتهاء الصفة القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "est":

e.g.

• The snake is the thinnest.



• Which ...?

• أى (للتخيير)........؟

Which one is the + adjective (الصفة) + est ?

e.g.

A : **Which** one is the shortest?

B : **The cheetah** is the shortest.



Phonics Time

ou /aʊ/		ow /aʊ/	
house	منزل	brown	بني
mouse	فأر	gown	فستان واسع
mouth	فم	town	مدينة صغيرة
cloud	سحابة	cow	بقرة
out	خارج	owl	بومة
couch	أريكة (كنبة)	clown	مهرج
shout	يصيح	down	أسفل
trout	سمكة السلمون	flower	زهرة
mountain	جبل		

Writing Time

Answered Examples

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

...الترتيبة تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.

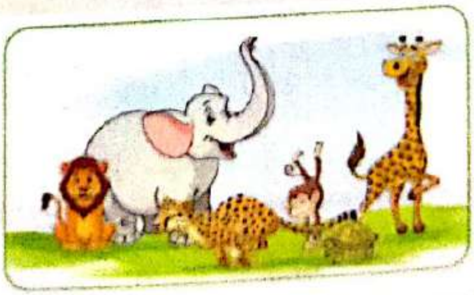


(WB)

a The family is at the Safari Park. There is a monkey on the car. The monkey is cute. They are happy.



b The children are at the zoo. There are many animals there. The cheetah is the fastest animal. The elephant is the biggest one.



c There are many animals. The monkey is the thinnest. The turtle is the slowest. The giraffe is the tallest.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

حديقة السفارى		شباك	
قرد		لطيف/جذاب	
بسرعة		مخيف	
سيارة		خمن ماذا!!	
يؤلم		لا تقلق	

فيل		سمين	
شمبانزى		قصير	
فهـد		ثعبان	
طويل		سلحفاة بحرية	
زرافة		نحيف	

Phonics Time

أريكة (كنبة)	....	فستان واسع	....
بومة	....	سحابة	....
بنى	....	مهرج	....
يصيح	....	سمكة السلمون	....
سخيف	....	بقرة	....
منزل	....	فار	....

Workbook
Conversation Time

A **Fill in the blanks.**

car	cute	Quick	What	windows	is	going
what	worry	won't	monkey	scary	Look	not



1. Dad! Guess what!
2. What?
3. There's a monkey on the car!
4. Quick! Shut the window!
5. Look! There it is.
6. Oh, it's cute.
7. It's not cute. It's scary.
8. Don't worry. It won't hurt you.
9. Aw! It's going away.

B **Look and write.**

1. mouse / jump / bed



Guess what! — What?

There's a mouse under the bed.

Quick! Jump on the bed.

2. lizard / shut / door



Guess what! — What?

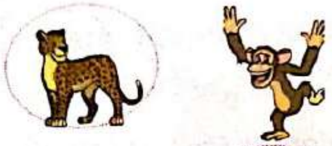
There's a lizard outside the door.

Quick! Shut the door.

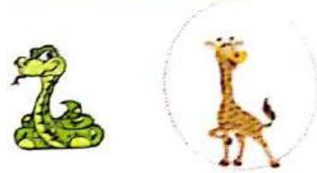
Workbook
Word Time

A Unscramble, write and circle.

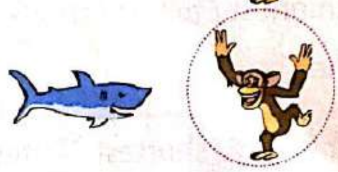
1. aceehht
cheetah



2. aeffgir
giraffe



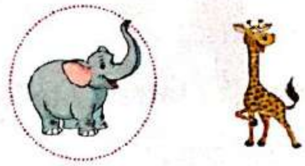
3. aceehimnpz
chimpanzee



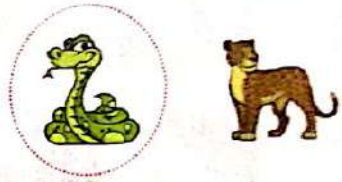
4. elrttu
turtle



5. aeehlnpt
elephant



6. aekns
snake



B Look and write.

1.

She's tall.

2.

He's short.

3.

She's fat.

4.

She's thin.

C Look and write.

1.

The chimpanzee is short.

2.

The giraffe is tall.

3.

The snake is thin.

4.

The elephant is fat.

Workbook
Practice Time

A Circle and write.

1. 

Which one is the tallest / shortest / (fattest)?
The snake is the fattest.

2. 

Which one is the thinnest / tallest / shortest ?
The turtle is the shortest .

3. 

Which one is the thinnest / shortest / fattest ?
The elephant is the fattest .

4. 

Which one is the slowest / fattest / tallest?
The turtle is the slowest .

B Write the questions and answers.

1. tall



Which one is the tallest ?

The giraffe is the tallest.

2. short



Which one is the shortest?

The turtle is the shortest.

3. fat



Which one is the fattest?

The elephant is the fattest.

4. thin



Which one is the thinnest?

The snake is the thinnest.

Workbook
Phonics Time

A Does it have ou or ow? Look and write.

1. 
t ow n

2. 
c ow

3. 
m ou se

4. 
cl ou d

5. 
sh ou t

6. 
g ow n

7. 
h ou se

8. 
m ou th

B Fill in the blanks. Use some words twice.

shouting
mountain
flowers
house
mouth
cows
clouds



1. The mouse is climbing the mountain .
2. The man is shouting . His mouth is open.
3. There are five flowers .
4. The cows are eating the grass.
5. There are two clouds in the sky.
6. There is a little house on the mountain .

Unit 8
Test

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

a. clown - flower b. mouse - mouth c. owl - town

2 Listen and complete:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 272

A: When did you go to the zoo?

B: I went there last Friday.

A: (1).................... did you see there?

B: I (2).................... the lion and the cheetah.

A: Did you (3).................... pictures?

B: Yes, I (4).................... .

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	guess	shut	fat	hurt	....
2.	monkey	cute	careful	tall	....
3.	chimpanzee	elephant	turtle	thin	....
4.	clown	town	house	home	....
5.	owl	shout	go	meet	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

4

played – chimpanzee – of – giraffe – lion

Last week, we visited the Safari Park. We saw lots (1)....of.......... animals there. We saw the (2).chimpanzee It liked to eat bananas. We also saw the (3)..................... It was very tall. My brother (4)....................... with the elephant. It was a good day.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

We live in a big house in a small town. My father is a clown and my mother is a housewife[1]. Yesterday, my sister saw a little brown mouse on the couch. She shouted and my father told her not to shout. The mouse ran fast and got out of the house. My sister had a gown and went to a party with mum. There were lots of clouds and it snowed. They came home early.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. We live in a small house in a big town.	(..................)	(.........✓)
2. My sister saw a red mouse.	(..................)	(.........✓)
3. My sister and mum went to the party.	(.....✓.....)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did the sister see on the couch? ....

5. When did the mum and the sister come home? ....

(1) housewife ربة منزل

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6)

1. looking – the – I'm – monkeys – at.

....

2. Safari Park – you – to – Will – go – the?

....

3. you – told – I – be – careful – to.

....

4. cheetah – the fastest – Is – the – animal?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: (6)



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2)

1. There is a cat on laila's car/

....

2. did you see the trout/

....

Units 7&8 Test

Selected from School Exams



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. house - town
إدارة شرق الفيوم 2018

b. fork - short
إدارة فرشوط 2019

c. gown - down
إدارة القوصية 2019

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

إدارة منيا القمح 2018

Noha : Nour! Guess what!
Nour : (1)........................?
Noha : There's a monkey (2)........................ the car.
Nour : A (3)........................? Quick! Shut the window.
Noha : It's cute.
Nour : It's not cute. It's (4)........................ .



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers	
1.	fish	tall	big	fast	thin	إدارة الشرابية 2017
2.	aquarium	park	bank	dolphin	home	إدارة إهناسيا 2018
3.	shark	camel	eel	crab	dolphin	إدارة العمادي 2019
4.	bigger	brother	slower	faster	finger	إدارة المنيا 2018
5.	thin	tiger	giraffe	monkey	lion	إدارة الشروق 2018

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't worry. It won't .... you.
   a) hurt b) shut c) look d) sit
2. .... there any airplanes?
   a) Is b) Are c) Was d) Do
3. The crab is .... than the whale.
   a) slowest b) slower c) the slowest d) slow
4. I'm .... for the bathroom.
   a) looking b) eating c) drawing d) cooking

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Salma went to the zoo yesterday. She saw many animals there. The lion is faster than the giraffe. The elephant is bigger than the monkey. The turtle is slower than the rabbit. The fox is smaller than the bear. The cheetah is the fastest animal. The giraffe is the tallest one. Salma was happy. She went back home at 10 o'clock.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. The elephant is smaller than the monkey.	(..............)	(..............)
2. The lion is faster than the giraffe.	(..............)	(..............)
3. The cheetah is the slowest animal.	(..............)	(..............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Salma go yesterday?

....

5. When did Salma go back home?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. do - , Sarah - Which - you - one - want?

.... إدارة سمنود 2018

2. is - giraffe - The - animal - tallest - the.

.... إدارة منوف 2017

3. than - The eel - slower - the - shark - is.

.... إدارة بسيون 2019

4. did - at - What - aquarium - see - you - the?

.... إدارة شربين 2018

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

إدارة أخميم 2019



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. i went to the aquarium yesterday/

.... إدارة سرس الليان 2018

2. no, it wasn t.

.... إدارة السلام 2018

Unit 9

By the Seashore

بجوار شاطئ البحر



Unit Objectives

أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time

- Express excitement.
- التعبير عن الإثارة والتشويق.
- Congratulate others. • تهنئة الآخرين.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
- التعرف إلى المتحدثين في محادثة.

Word Time

- Write sentences. • كتابة جمل.
- Read sentences. • قراءة جمل.
- Learn vocabulary: Outdoor activities.
- تعلم المفردات اللغوية: الأنشطة الخارجية.

Practice Time

- Ask about what someone likes to do.
- السؤال عما يحب شخص فعله.
- Use Wh- questions with "What & like".
- السؤال باستخدام "What & like".
- Use affirmative statements with "like to + infinitive".
- استخدام الجمل المثبتة مع "like to + infinitive".

Phonics Time

- Distinguish between different sounds of "oo".
- التمييز بين الأصوات المختلفة لـ "oo".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
- الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

Lesson 1

SB/ WB: P. (9)

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

have

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

seashore	شاطئ البحر	ball	كرة	nice (adj.)	لطيف / رائع
game	مباراة/لعبة	close (adj.)	قريب/متكافئ	again	مرة أخرى
sure (adj.)	بالتأكيد	time	مرة/ وقت		

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

butterfly	فراشة	head	رأس

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
miss	يفقد/يفوت	missed
play	يلعب	played
guess	يخمن	guessed
worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
win	يفوز/يكسب	won
hurt	يؤلم/ يؤذى	hurt
see	يرى	saw

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

by the seashore	بجوار شاطئ البحر	miss the ball	يفقد /يفوت الكرة
Congratulations.	تهانينا / مبروك (للتهنئة).	It was close.	النتيجة كانت متقاربة.

Unit 8

Characters of the conversation
شخصيات المحادثة


Kareem


Sarah


Bill


Mona

Story of the conversation
قصة المحادثة

- Mona and Kareem play volleyball with their friends. They lose the game, so they want to play again.

منى وكريم يلعبان الكرة الطائرة مع أصدقائهما. إنهما يخسران المباراة ولذلك يريدان أن يلعبا مرة أخرى.

A Listen and repeat.
استمع وكرر


Oh! I missed the ball.
أوه! فقدت الكرة.

1

We won! We won!
فزنا! فزنا!




Congratulations.
تهانينا/ مبروك.

2

Nice game. It was close.
مباراة رائعة. النتيجة كانت متقاربة.



3


Yeah, it was.
نعم لقد كانت كذلك.


Do you want to play again?
هل تريد أن تلعب مرة أخرى؟

4

Sure.
بالتأكيد.




This time we'll win.
هذه المرة سنفوز.

5

We'll see.
سنرى.



B Listen and point to the speakers.
استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with three other students.
مثل الحوار المحادثة مع ثلاثة تلاميذ آخرين.

Language Functions

1. Offering: العرض:

Do you want to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... ? هل تريد أن ....؟

e.g.

A : Do you want to play again? هل تريد أن نلعب مرة أخرى؟

B : Sure. بالتأكيد.

2. Expressing excitement: التعبير عن الإثارة والتشويق:

e.g.

A : Guess what! خمن ماذا!

B : What? ماذا؟

A : There's a butterfly on your head. يوجد فراشة على رأسك.

Check point

Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

إدارة شمال بورسعيد 2018

Nour : Oh! I missed the ball.

Hadeer: We won! We (1) ..won..........!

Nour : Congratulations.

Hadeer: Was it (2) ..close........?

Nour : Yeah, it was. Do you (3) ..want.......... to play again?

Hadeer: (4) ..sure.......... .

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.

Guess what!

خمن ماذا!

What?

ماذا؟



There's a butterfly on your head.

يوجد فراشة على رأسك.

Oh, no!

آه، لا!

Don't worry. It's cute.
It won't hurt you.

لا تقلق، إنها لطيفة، إنها لن تؤذيك.



- لاحظ أن حرفى (sh) فى (seashore) ينطقان /ʃ/ ش.
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ti) فى (congratulations) ينطقان /ʃ/ ش.
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) غالبًا ما ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (y - i - e) كما فى(nice).
- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (close) ينطق /s/ (ز).

Conversation Time

Exercise

1 Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

إدارة الشرقية 2019

Ali : We won! We won!

Ahmed : (1) ....

Ali : Nice game. It was (2) ....

Ahmed : (3) .... you want to play again?

Ali : Sure. (4) .... you ready?

Ahmed : Yes, we are.

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

team - went - missed - going - close

إدارة أسوان 2018

Ali and Ahmed played with their friends. Ali (1) .... the ball. The other (2) .... won the game. The game was (3) .... They are (4) .... to play another game of volleyball. It was a nice day.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Friday, I went to the beach with my friends. We played volleyball. It's our favourite game. We were divided[1] into two teams[2]. Each team had three players[3]. My team played hard, but we lost the match. The other team was happy. I told them to play another match and they agreed. My team won the second match. We all were happy. It was a nice day.

(1) divided مقسمين (2) team فريق (3) players لاعبون

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1.	We went to the beach last Monday.	( )	( )
2.	Each team had three players.	( )	( )
3.	It was a nice day.	( )	( )

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who won the second match? ....
5. What's your favourite game? ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. ball - missed - the - I.
....
2. This - win - we'll - time.
....
3. the - Was - close - game?
....
4. play - you - Do - to - want - again?
....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

6 Punctuate the following:

1. where is the ball/ ....
2. yeah it was. ....

معلومة من بوليسف
فيتامين "أ" في الجزر والبطاطا والخضراوات الخضراء الداكنة كالجرجير مهم لتقوية نظري وصحة بشرتي وجلدي

Word Time

Lesson 2

SB/ WB: P. (10)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Outdoor activities: أنشطة خارجية:



play ping-pong
يلعب تنس الطاولة



play volleyball
يلعب الكرة الطائرة



snorkel
يغوص باستخدام أداة الغطس



go fishing
يذهب للصيد/يصطاد السمك



go horseback riding
يمارس رياضة ركوب الخيل



go sailing
يبحر



in-line skate
يتزلج/ يقوم بالتزلج



listen to music
يستمع إلى الموسيقى

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

Which ...?	أي (للتخيير) ...؟	faster	أسرع
Mars (WB)	كوكب المريخ	artist (WB)	فنان

Days of the week (WB) يام الأسبوع

Saturday	السبت	Sunday	الأحد	Monday	
Tuesday	الثلاثاء	Wednesday	الأربعاء	Thursday	
Friday	الجمعة				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يلعب	played	snorkel	يغوص باستخدام أداة غطس	snorkelled
sail	يبحر	sailed	listen	يستمع	listened

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

Positive!	تعبير يدل على الموافقة.	go on a ride (WB)	ركب لعبة من ألعاب الملاهى



معلومة من يونيسف

عظامى وأسنانى قوية

لأنى أشرب اللبن وآكل منتجات الألبان مثل:

A Listen and repeat.

استمــع وردد.

1 play ping-pong
2 play volleyball
3 snorkel
4 go fishing
5 go horseback riding
6 go sailing
7 in-line skate
8 listen to music

B Point and say the words.

أشـــر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers	
1.	play	go	listen	horse	....	2018
2.	football	basketball	music	volleyball	....	2019
3.	fishing	swim	sailing	skating	....	2019
4.	horse	camel	fishing	sheep	....	2017
5.	sailed	went	played	listened	....	الإسكندرية 2018

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.



Boy : Which one do you want? واحد تريدين؟
Girl : I don't know. لا أعرف.
Boy : Please make up your mind. من فضلك قرري.
Girl : Okay. I'll take this one. حسنا سآخذ هذا.



Boy 1 : Go faster! Go faster! أسرع! أسرع!
Boy 2 : Are you sure? هل أنت متأكد؟
Boy 1 : Positive! نعم

Language Functions

Notes

1. The future simple tense with "will":

- زمن المستقبل البسيط مع "will":

Usage الاستخدام

- The future simple tense is used for expressing something that will happen or is expected to happen in the future.

- يستخدم زمن المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن شىء ما سيحدث أو متوقع حدوثه فى المستقبل.

e.g. • I will go horseback riding on Thursday. • He'll in-line skate on Tuesday.

Form التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. • Kim and Maged will snorkel on Saturday. • She'll listen to music on Tuesday.

Note

لاحظ استخدام "on" قبل أيام الأسبوع:

e.g. • She'll listen to music on Tuesday.

2. The present continuous tense:

- زمن المضارع المستمر:

Usage الاستخدام

- The present continuous tense is used for expressing an action that is happening now.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن (وقت الكلام).

e.g. • I'm snorkelling. • She's listening to music. • We are playing volleyball.

Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	→ am ('m)	(inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ....
He/She/It/ اسم مفرد	→ is ('s)	
We/You/They/ اسم جمع	→ are ('re)	

e.g. • I'm going sailing. • He is playing ping-pong. • They're going horseback riding.

Check point

Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

2019 القاهرة

sailing - in - sport - and - under

My name's Noha, I live in Port Said. I have one brother. His name is Tamer. My favourite (1) sport is horseback riding. My brother likes to go (2) sailing. We always go to Hurghada (3) in summer. We like to swim (4) under ... go fishing.

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى الصفحات (31 - 29) بالكتاب المدرسى.



go fishing | go horse back riding | go sailing | in line skate



listen to music | play ping pong | play volley day | snorkel



- لاحظ ان حرفى (ck) فى (back) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ ان حرف (t) فى (listen) لا ينطق "silent".
- لاحظ ان حرف (s) فى (music - positive) ينطق /z/ (ز).

Word Time
Exercise

① Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	Saturday	Sunday	May	Wednesday	Friday
2.	play	ping-pong	go	listen	....
3.	tall	slower	fatter	faster	....
4.	want	go	went	make	....
5.	positive	please	sure	fast	....

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please .... up your mind.
   a) take b) make c) get d) need

إدارة بنى مزار 2018

2. She is .... sailing.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going
3. He .... go horseback riding.
   a) is b) will c) was d) are

إدارة المطرية 2019

4. She is .... to music.
   a) playing b) going c) listening d) doing

③ Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة أبو النمرس 2017

Yesterday was a holiday. I went to the beach with my friends. We went there by bus. Mohamed enjoyed snorkelling. Ahmed and Sarah caught a big fish. Mona and Enjy played volleyball. Kareem went horseback riding. Hana helped us make sandwiches. It was a nice day. We went back home at 7 o'clock.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mohamed enjoyed horseback riding.	( )	(✓)
2. Mona and Enjy played volleyball.	(✓)	( )
3. Ahmed and Sarah caught a small fish.	( )	(✓)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who went horseback riding?

....

5. How did Hana help them?

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. this - I - one - will - take. (2018)

I ....

2. one - do - Which - want - you? (2018)

Which one do you want?

3. is - horseback - going - She - riding. (2018)

shi is going riding horseback.

4. you - Are - sure, - Noha? (2019)

Are you Noha sure?

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: (2018)

....

....

....

....



ثمرة الفاكهة مفيدة لجسمى أكثر من العصير لأنها تعطينى الألياف التى تساعد على الهضم

معلومة من يونيسف

Practice Time

Lesson 3

SB/ WB: P. (11)

استمـع وردد.

A Listen and repeat.

What	do you	like to do?	I like	to listen to music.
	does he		He likes	

STRUCTURE

Wh- questions with "What & like":

السؤال عما يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص باستخدام أداة الاستفهام "What" والفعل "like":

What ما/ماذا	do	I/ we/ you/ they/ اسم جمع	like to	......? مصدر الفعل (inf.) (do)
	does	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد		

e.g.
A : **What** do you like to do?
B : I like to listen to music.



e.g.
A : **What** does he like to do?
B : He likes to in-line skate.



Affirmative statements with "like to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل":

استخدام 'مصدر الفعل (.inf) "like to + فى الجمل المثبتة.

I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع	like to	...... مصدر الفعل (inf.)
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	likes to	

e.g. • They like to play volleyball.



e.g. • She likes to go fishing.



Note

- يضاف "s" فى نهاية الفعل "like" مع الضمائر He/ She/ It أو أى اسم مفرد:

e.g. • He likes to snorkel.

e.g. • **Mona** likes to play ping-pong.

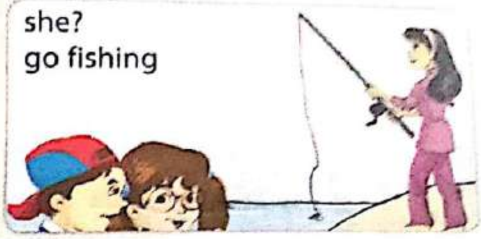
Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

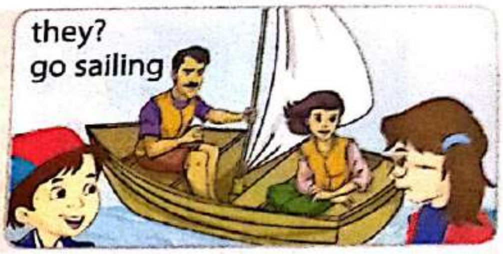
1. We like to .... fishing.
   a) go b) goes c) going d) went
2. A: What .... you like to do? B: I like to snorkel.
   a) are b) does c) do d) is
3. Fatma likes .... volleyball.
   a) plays b) to play c) played d) play
4. What does Adel .... to play?
   a) likes b) like c) to like d) liked

B **Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.** استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

1. **What** does she like to do?
   She likes to go fishing.



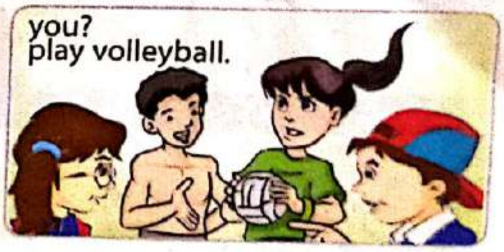
2. **What** do they like to do?
   They like to go sailing.



3. what .... do you ....like.... do?
   I like to snorkel



4. **What** do you like to do?
   ....



5. ....?
   He likes to in-line skate.





6. what do you like to do ?

....

C Look at page 10. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

اقرأ صفحة 10 بالكتاب المدرسى، أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:



e.g.

S1 What does she like to do?

S2 She likes to go fishing.

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does he .... to do?
   a) likes b) like c) liked d) to like
2. I like to listen to ....
   a) football b) ping-pong c) music d) volleyball

إدارة شمال الجيزة 2019

3. We like to go ....
   a) ping-pong b) sailing c) volleyball d) football

إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2019

4. I like .... fishing.
   a) to go b) goes c) went d) go

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة العليا 2018

Mona and Kareem always go to the beach on holidays. They like to do many things on holidays. Kareem likes to go fishing. Mona likes to play volleyball and ping-pong. They both like to in-line skate and go sailing. Kareem and Mona are clever [1] at school, so the teachers like them.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mona and Kareem like to go to the zoo on holidays.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Kareem likes to play volleyball.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Mona and Kareem like to in-line skate.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where do they go on holidays? ....
5. Why do the teachers like them? ....

(1) clever ذكى

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. likes - fishing - to - She - go.

....

2. do - they - do - What - like - to? 2018

....

3. like - to - horseback - riding - I - go. 2019

....

4. she - What - to - play - does - like?

....

4 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

2019

my sister is go horseback
home.

....

....



5 Punctuate the following:

1. do you like to go horseback riding/ 2017

D ?

2. yes, she likes english. 2018

....

Phonics Time

Lesson 4

SB/ WB: P. (12)

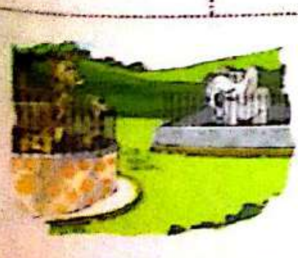
Main Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

استمع إلى نطق الكلمات الآتيـة ولاحظ الفرق فى نطق "oo"

oo /ʊ/

 cook طباخ	 look ينظر	 wood خشب	 book كتاب	 foot قدم
 hood غطاء واق للرأس	 hook صنارة	 took أخذ	 good جيد	 cookie رقاقة بسكويت

oo /u:/

 broom مقشة (مكنسة)	 moon قمر	 noodles مكرونة رفيعة/شعرية	 boot فردة حذاء برقبة
 kangaroo الكنجرو (حيوان الكنغر)	 moose الموظ (غزال أمريكى ضخم)	 school مدرسة	 scooter سكوتر
 zoo حديقة الحيوان	 rooster ديك	 poodle كلب ذو شعر كثيف	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cook	يطبخ	cooked	look	ينظر	looked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	see	يرى	saw
go	يذهب	went			

Check point

Listen and circle:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. foot - cook
إدارة القوصية 2019

b. moon - boot
إدارة بنها 2017

c. wood - hook
إدارة أخميم 2019

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



oo /ʊ/



cook



look



wood



oo /u:/



broom



moon



noodles

B Which word has a different "oo" sound? Listen and circle.

أي كلمة بها صوت "oo" مختلف؟ استمع وضع دائرة.

1. book
boot
cook

2. kangaroo
moon
foot

3. moose
school
hood

4. scooter
hook
zoo

5. rooster
took
wood

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور. ثم استمع.

1. Ms. Hood and her poodle went to the zoo.
2. They saw a red rooster and a kangaroo.
3. They looked at a moose, and they looked at the moon.
4. And then they went to school on a scooter.









Phonics Time Exercise

1 Listen and circle.

273 راجع نص الاستماع ص

a. broom - moon   b. hood - took   c. moose - school

إدارة مغاغة 2018   إدارة أبو قرقاص 2018   إدارة بني مزار 2019

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	look	cook	go	wood	....
2.	broom	wood	took	book	....
3.	scooter	dog	kangaroo	moose	....
4.	sat	look	cooked	stood	....
5.	boot	kangaroo	hood	hook	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

at - moon - rooster - were - on

Ms. Hood and her poodle went to the zoo. They saw a red (1) .... and a kangaroo. They looked at a moose and they looked at the (2) .... And then, they went to school (3) .... a scooter. They (4) .... happy.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. did - What - see - they?

....

2. moon - at - They - the - looked.

....

3. saw - a - rooster - Ms. Hood - red.

....

4. Ms. Hood - go - did - her - Where - and - poodle?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

....

....

Unit 9
Revision

Conversation Time

Kareem :	Oh! I missed the ball.	أوه! فقدت الكرة.
Sarah :	We won! We won!	فزنا! فزنا!
Kareem :	Congratulations.	تهانينا/ مبروك.
Sarah :	Nice game. It was close.	مباراة رائعة. النتيجة كانت متقاربة.
Bill :	Yeah, it was. Do you want to play again?	نعم، هل تريد أن نلعب مرة أخرى؟
Kareem :	Sure.	بالتأكيد.
Mona :	This time we'll win.	هذه المرة سنفوز.
Sarah :	We'll see.	سنرى.

Word Time

play ping-pong يلعب تنس الطاولة	**play volleyball** يلعب الكرة الطائرة	**snorkel** يغوص باستخدام أداة الغطس
go fishing يذهب للصيد/ يصطاد السمك	**go horseback riding** يمارس رياضة ركوب الخيل	**go sailing** يبحر
in-line skate يتزلج / يقوم بالتزلج	**listen to music** يستمع إلى الموسيقى	

Practice Time

Wh- questions with "What & like":

السؤال بأداة الاستفهام "What" والفعل "like":

للسؤال عما يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

What (ما / ماذا)
- do → I/ we/ you/ they/ اسم جمع
- does → he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد

→ like to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ......?

للإجابة:

- I/ We/ You/ They/ اسم جمع → like to
- He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد → likes to

→ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g.

A: What do you like to do?

B: I like to go horseback riding.



e.g.

A: What does she like to do?

B: She likes to play ping-pong.



Phonics Time

oo /ʊ/		oo /u:/	
cook	طباخ / يطبخ	broom	مقشة (مكنسة)
look	ينظر	moon	قمر
wood	خشب	noodles	مكرونة رفيعة/ شعرية
book	كتاب	boot	فردة حذاء برقبة
foot	قدم	kangaroo	الكنجرو (حيوان الكنغر)
hood	غطاء واق للرأس	moose	الموظ (غزال أمريكي ضخم)
hook	صنارة	school	مدرسة
took	أخذ	scooter	سكوتر
good	جيد	zoo	حديقة الحيوان
cookie	رقاقة بسكويت	rooster	ديك
		poodle	كلب ذو شعر كثيف

Writing Time

Answered Examples

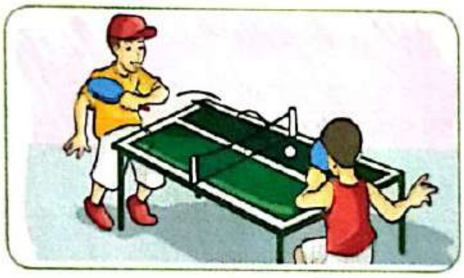
Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

...ية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



(WB)

a Yesterday, I went to the seashore with my friends. We played volleyball. I missed the ball and my team lost the game. We played again and won.



b There are two boys. They like to play ping-pong. They play ping-pong every day. It's a nice game.



c Ms. Hood and her poodle went to the zoo. They saw a red rooster. They saw a kangaroo. They were happy.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

شاطئ البحر	....	مرة أخرى	....
يفقد/ يفوت	....	لطيف/ رائع	....
كرة	....	يفوز/ يكسب	....
مرة/ وقت	....	قريب/ متكافئ	....
تهانينا/ مبروك!	....	النتيجة كانت متقاربة	....

Word Time

يلعب تنس الطاولة	....	يستمع إلى الموسيقى	....
يذهب للصيد/ يصطاد	....	يتزلج/ يقوم بالتزلج	....
يمارس رياضة ركوب الخيل	....	يبحر	....
يغوص باستخدام أداة الغطس	....	يلعب الكرة الطائرة	....

Phonics Time

طباخ	....	صنارة	....
مقشة (مكنسة)	....	الكنجرو (حيوان الكنغر)	....
قدم	....	الموظ (غزال أمريكى ضخم)	....
رقاقة بسكويت	....	غطاء واق للرأس	....
خشب	....	سكوتر	....
فردة حذاء برقبة	....	كلب ذو شعر كثيف	....

Workbook
Conversation Time

A Fill in the blanks.



We won!	Yeah, it was.	We'll see.	And this time, we'll win.
I missed it!	It was close.	Congratulations.	Do you want to play again?

1.  Oh, no! I missed it!

2.  We won! We won!

3.  Congratulations.

4.  Nice game. It was close.

5.  Yeah. It was.

6.  Do you want to play again?

7.  Sure. And this time, we'll win.

8.  We'll see.

Workbook

Word Time

A Look and read. Then write.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
play ping-pong with Mona	go sailing with Reem	in-line skate and listen to music with Maged	play volleyball with Mona	go horseback riding with Samy	go fishing with Dad	snorkel with Maged and Kim

1. Kareem will snorkel with Maged and Kim on Saturday.
2. Kareem will play ping-pong with Mona on Sunday.
3. Kareem will go horseback riding with Samy on Thursday .
4. Kareem will play volleyball with Mona on Wednesday.
5. Kareem will go fishing with Dad on Friday.
6. Kareem will in-line skate and listen to music with Maged on Tuesday.

B Look and write.

1. 

He's going sailing.

2. 

They're playing ping-pong.

3. 

He's in-line skating.

4. 

She's listening to music.

5. 

He's snorkelling.

6. 

They're going fishing.

Workbook
Practice Time

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... do you like to do?

   a) Where b) When c) What d) Whose

2. I .... horseback riding.

   a) likes b) like c) sing d) sings

3. She likes playing ....

   a) ping-pong b) sailing c) fishing d) snorkelling

4. The dog stood on one ....

   a) nose b) face c) ear d) foot

B Look, write and punctuate.



1. 

   What does she like to do?

   She likes to go fishing.

2. 

   What does he like to do?

   He likes to play volleyball

3. 

   What do they like to do?

   They like to in-line skate.

4. 

   What does it like to do?

   It likes to go fishing.

Workbook

Phonics Time

A Which word has a different oo sound? Read and circle.

1. noodle / moon / wood
2. book / took / moon
3. good / rooster / cookie
4. foot / school / wood
5. broom / moon / took

B Read and match.

1. The dog cooked some noodles.
2. The poodle and the rooster looked at the moon.
3. The moose stood on one foot.
4. She sat on the wood and read a book.






C Look at B and write the oo words in the correct category.

cookie	
foot	wood
book	cooked
looked	stood

broom	
noodles	poodle
rooster	moose
moon	

Unit 9
Test 1

40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. book - look   b. good - wood   c. foot - noodle

2 Listen and complete:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

Hala : We won! We won!
Mona : (1)............................ .
Hala : It was close. Do you want to play (2)............................?
Mona : Sure. This (3)............................ we'll win.
Hala : We'll see. Are you (4)............................?
Mona : Yes, we are.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

5

					Answers
1.	seashore	park	aquarium	sure	home
2.	March	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Friday
3.	kangaroo	poodle	rooster	hook	....
4.	sailing	fishing	snorkel	horseback riding	playing
5.	play	ride	make	volleyball	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He usually .... to listen to music.

a) likes b) like c) to like d) liked

2. This time we'll ....

a) win b) wins c) won d) winning

3. The dog stood on one ....

a) nose b) face c) ear d) foot (WB)

4. Do you .... to play again?

a) grow b) listen c) want d) meet

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last week, I went to the seashore with my family. We went there by car. I enjoyed swimming. My father caught a big fish. My brother played ping-pong and my mother read comic books. We ate sandwiches and sang songs. It was a great day. We were very happy.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. I enjoyed playing music.	(....................)	(....................)
2. My father read comic books.	(....................)	(....................)
3. We sang songs by the seashore.	(....................)	(....................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did the father do?

....

5. What did they eat?

....

Unit 9

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. want - again - to - Do - play - you?

....

2. the - Was - close - game?

....

3. play - likes - to - football - Kareem.

....

4. He - on - school - to - went - a scooter.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1. no, i don't know.

....

2. what does hany like to play?

....

Unit 9 Test 2

Selected from School Exams

40

A. Listening

① Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. foot - took b. scooter - rooster c. school - moon

إدارة كفر الزيات 2019 إدارة بلطيم 2018 إدارة شمال 2019

② Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

إدارة شبين القناطر 2018

Adel : Hello! Ali.

Ali : Hello! Adel.

Adel : What do you (1)................ to do?

Ali : I like to (2)................ football.

Adel : Do you play football (3)................ your brother?

Ali : No, I don't. My brother likes to go (4)................

B. Reading

③ Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	football	sail	sing	snorkel	
2.	play	win	want	slow	
3.	zoo	spoon	school	hospital	
4.	handball	basketball	thin	ping-pong	
5.	Sunday	Tuesday	Friday	noodles	

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

likes - snorkel - volleyball - play - like

My name is Noha. I have got one brother. His name is Kareem. I like my school very much. I like to (1)...play... ping-pong, but I don't like to play (2)................ . My brother (3)...like... to in-line skate, but he doesn't (4)...like to snorkel.

Volleyday

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Sarah. Last week, I went to the seashore. I went with my family. My father enjoyed snorkelling. My brother Ahmed caught a big fish. I played with my kite. My father took a lot of pictures. I helped my mother in preparing sandwiches. It was a nice day. We were very happy.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Sarah went to the seashore with her family.	(.......✓.......)	(..............)
2. Sarah's father enjoyed fishing.	(..............)	(.......✓.......)
3. Sarah caught a big fish.	(..............)	(.......✓.......)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Sarah play with?

....

5. What did her father do?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. cooked - some - My - noodles - mother. ادارة غرب الإسكندرية 2018

2. eat - He - to - cookies - likes. ادارة مير مواس 2019

3. to - like - Do - you - fishing - go? ادارة أشمون 2018

4. there - a butterfly - Is - my - on - head? ادارة برج العرب 2019

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

ادارة بني مزار 2018



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. they like to in-line skate/ ادارة كفر الدوار 2018

2. Did fatma go sailing on Friday/ ادارة الهرم 2017

Review 1

Sokkara's World

عالم سكرة



Objectives:

الأهداف:

Listening/Speaking:

- Participate in a conversation.
  - المشاركة في محادثة.
- Identify meaning of a conversation.
  - التعرف على معنى محادثة.

Reading/Writing:

- Recognise and produce words (vocabulary)
  - التعرف على الكلمات (المفردات اللغوية) واستخداماتها.

Story Time

SB: P. 13

A Listen and repeat. استمــع وردد.



B **Look at A. Listen and point.** انظـر إلى التمرين A . استمع وأشـر.

C **Listen. Circle True or False.** استمع، وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ.

1. Sokkara wants to play a game. True False
2. The elephant is taller than the giraffe. True False
3. Sokkar doesn't like to play this game. True False
4. The whale is the smallest. True False
5. Sokkar says, "You're the cutest." True False

D **Role-play these scenes.** تبادل الأدوار فى هذه المشاهد.

معلومة من يونيسف

اشطب الكلمات الآتية لتحصل على كلمة السر

فرشاة - أكل - معجون - مياه
عدم - عن - من - قبل - لب

ل	ع	م	م	غ	ف	م
ن	ك	ى	ن	س	ر	ع
ق	ا	ا	ع	ى	ش	ج
ة	ب	د	س	ل	ا	و
	م	ل		ن	ه	ن
ب	ل	ا	ل	ا	ا	ن

"رائحة الفم السيئة وتسوس الأسنان سببها الأساسى عدم ....

اغسل أسنانك من ٢-٣ مرات يوميًا بعد الأكل مباشرة وقبل النوم".



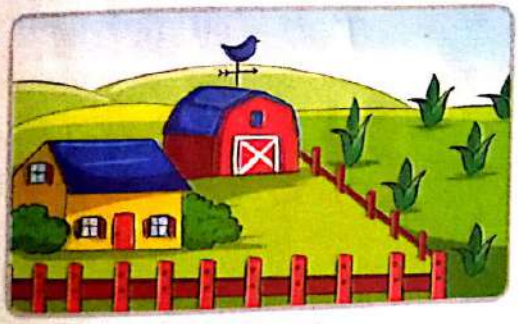
SB: P. 14

Activity Time

A Listen and write. استمع واكتب.

1. The house and barn are on the farm.
2. The fork and broom are in the yard.
3. Can a poodle cook corn?

1.



The house and barn

are on the farm.

2.



The fokes and broom

are in the yard.

3.

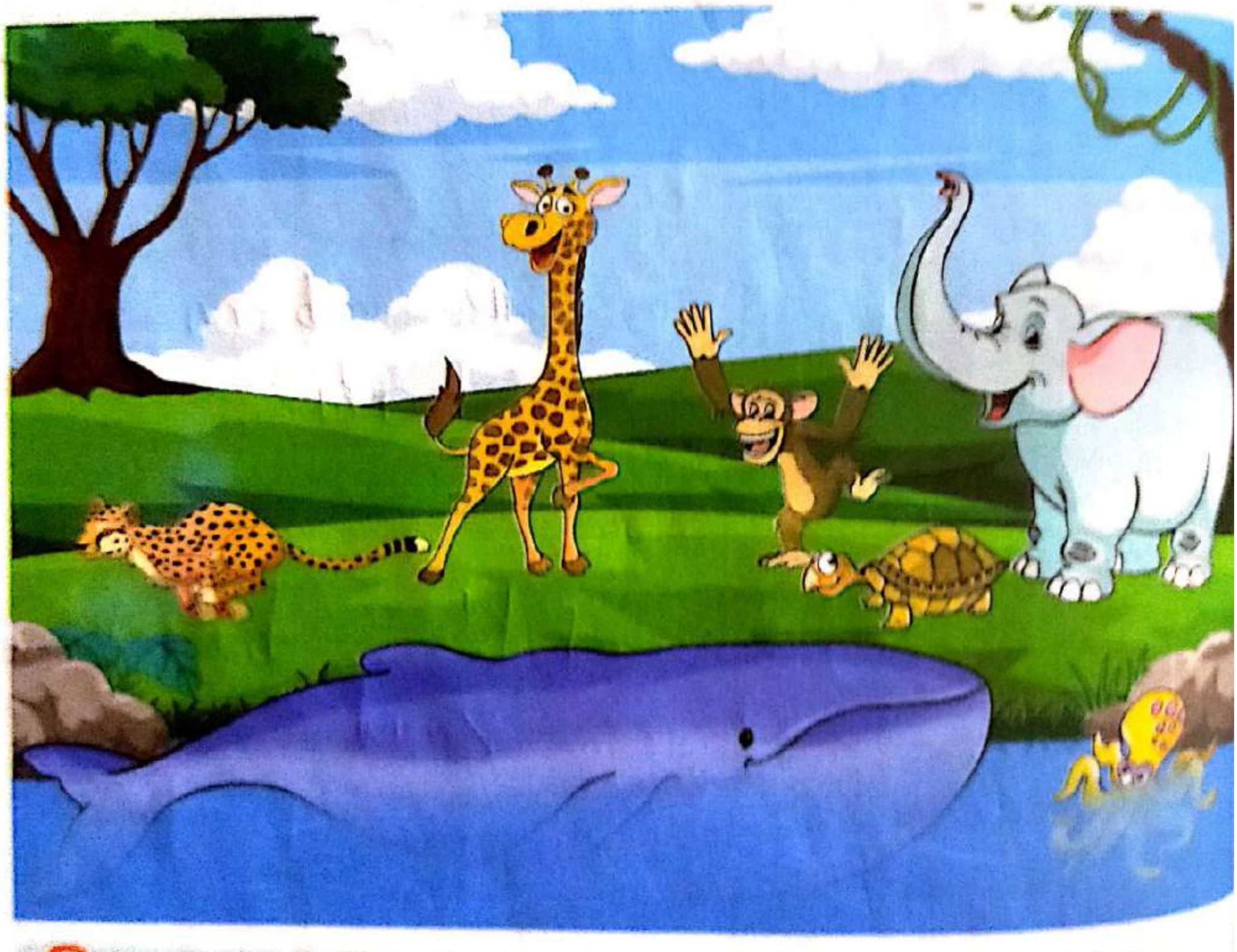


Can a poodle cook corn?

B Read and circle True or False.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ.

1. The whale is bigger than the elephant. True False
2. The chimpanzee is taller than the giraffe. True False
3. The turtle is the shortest. True False



C What do you like to do? Ask your classmates. Write their names.

ماذا تحب أن تفعل؟ اسأل زملاءك. اكتب أسماءهم.

- ______ likes to play ping-pong.
- ______ likes to in-line skate.
- ______ likes to snorkel.
- ______ likes to go fishing.
- ______ likes to listen to music.
- ______ likes to play volleyball.

Halfway Exams

Exam 1

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. yard – hard   b. house – mouse   c. hood – wood

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

Nour : Where's the monkey?

Hadeer : It's on the (1).............................. .

Nour : Is it (2)..............................?

Hadeer : Don't worry. It won't (3).............................. you.

Nour : Can I (4).............................. the window?

Hadeer : Sure.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	made	sing	took	built	
2.	cute	cool	shark	nice	
3.	teacher	doctor	cashier	make up	
4.	Why	sure	Which	What	
5.	noodles	cookies	cake	wood	

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I read a .... every day.
   a) storm b) horn c) story d) corn
2. He likes to .... sailing.
   a) ride b) go c) play d) take
3. Cheetah is the .... animal.
   a) fast b) faster c) fastest d) faster than
4. The whale is .... the crab.
   a) big b) bigger c) bigger than d) the biggest

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Heba usually gets up at half past six. She brushes her teeth. She has breakfas with her family. She walks to school at 7.30. Her school is near her house. Sh comes to school on time. Her favourite hobby is reading. She reads books abou fish. She likes the dolphin. The dolphin is faster than the octopus.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Heba has breakfast with her family.	(........................)	(........................)
2. Heba goes to school by bus.	(........................)	(........................)
3. The dolphin is faster than the octopus.	(........................)	(........................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What time does Heba get up? ....
5. What's Heba's favourite hobby? ....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. Shut – window – Quick! – the.

....

2. miss – He – the – didn't – ball.

....

3. play – want – Do – you – again – to?

....

4. you – What – do – like to – do?

....

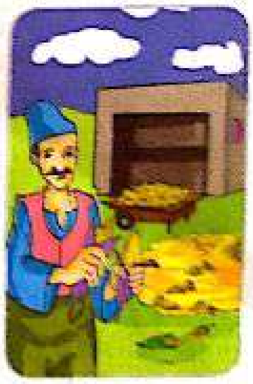
7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

I ....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. what does ahmed like to do?
2. Hey It s delicious.

Exam 2

Selected from School Exams

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

a. down – clown (إدارة الإسماعيلية 2018)

b. cookie – cook (إدارة الرياض 2019)

c. dark – card (إدارة المحلة 2018)

2 Listen and complete:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

Heba : I'm thirsty.

Alaa : Me, too. What are we going to (1) have ?

Heba : I'm going to have some orange juice. (2) What about you?

Alaa : I don't (3) know .

Heba : Please make up your (4) mind.

Alaa : OK. I'll have orange juice, too.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	volleyball	play	basketball	football	ping-pong
2.	crab	small	whale	shark	octpus
3.	park	giraffe	chimpanzee	lion	cheetah
4.	happy	scary	go	cute	tall
5.	do	play	music	snorkel	run

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

animals – giraffe – fastest – cards – slow

ادارة شبين الكوم 2017

We went to the zoo on Friday. We saw many (1)..animals.... there. The turtle is very (2)....slow........... . The cheetah is the (3)..fastest...... animal. The (4)..giraffe.... is very tall. I like animals very much.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

ادارة كفر الزيات 2017

Yesterday, we went to grandpa's farm. He has got animals in his barn. He has got cows and horses. He grows peas and corn on the farm. There was a storm in the evening. The sky was dark and it rained. We played cards and listened to music in the house. Grandpa made popcorn.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. There was a storm in the morning.	(..............)	(.....✓.....)
2. They listened to music in the house.	(.....✓.....)	(..............)
3. Grandpa made sandwiches.	(..............)	(.....✓.....)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does grandpa grow? ....

5. What did they play? ....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. the tallest – giraffe – The – animal - is.

the giraffe is the tallest animal.

2. on – She – to – went – school – a scooter.

she went to a scooter on school. on scooter

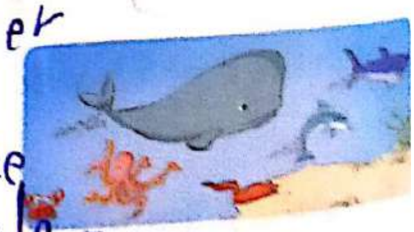
3. one – do – Which – want – you?

which one do you want ?

4. again – to – Do – want – play – you?

Do you want to play again ?

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



the whale is bigger than the crab. the shark is faster than the eel. the is than the whale. octpas I faster

8 Punctuate the following:

1. hager went to the zoo/ H

2. Let's go on friday/ F

the eel is faster than the shark

Unit 10 At the Summer Camp

في المعسكر الصيفي



Unit Objectives

أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time

- Express enthusiasm.
  - التعبير عن الحماس.
- Express and accept compliments.
  - التعبير عن وقبول المجاملات.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  - التعرف إلى المتحدثين في محادثة.

Word Time

- Write sentences. • كتابة جمل.
- Read sentences. • قراءة جمل.
- Learn vocabulary: Fun activities.
  - تعلم المفردات اللغوية: الأنشطة الترفيهية.

Practice Time

- Express likes and dislikes.
  - التعبير عما نحب ولا نحب.
- Use affirmative & negative statements with "like + gerund" & conjunctions "but".
  - استخدام "like + (inf.) + ing" والروابط "but" بالجمل المثبتة والمنفية.

Phonics Time

- Distinguish between sounds of "er, ir, ur".
  - التمييز بين أصوات "er, ir, ur".
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
  - الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

Lesson 1

SB: P. 15/ WB: P. (13)

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

save

summer	الصيف	camp	معسكر	kite	طائرة ورقية
myself	نفيس	true (adj.)	حقيقي/ صحيح	hard (adj.)	صعب
easy (adj.)	سهل	great (adj.)	عظيم	paper	ورق
string	خيط	some	بعض		

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

ping-pong	تنس طاولة	sure	بالتأكيد
cool (adj.) (WB)	رائع/لطيف	tape (WB)	شريط لاصق
crayons (WB)	ألوان شمع		

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
kid	يمزح	kidded	need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	show	يعرض/يوضح	showed

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

Wow! What a nice kite!	واو! يا لها من طائرة ورقية جميلة!	by myself	بنفسى/بمفردى
You're kidding!	انت تمزح!	It's true.	إنه حقيقي.
Let's get some.	هيا بنا نحصل على (نحضر) البعض.		

Characters of the conversation

شخصيات المحادثة



Mike



Laila

Story of the conversation

قصة المحادثة

- Mike and Laila are at school. Laila makes a nice kite. She shows Mike how to make another one.
- مايك وليلى فى المدرسة. ليلى تصنع طائرة ورقية جميلة. وهى توضح لمايك كيف يصنع واحدة أخرى.

A Listen and repeat.

استمـع وردد.



Wow! What a nice kite!

واو! يا لها من طائرة ورقية جميلة!

1

Thanks. I made it by myself.

شكراً. صنعتها بنفسى/ بمفردى.





You're kidding!

أنت تمزحين!

2

No, it's true. I made it.

لا، إنه حقيقى. أنا صنعتها.





Was it hard?

هل كانت صعبة؟

3

No, it was easy. I'll show you.

لا، كانت سهلة. سأوضح لك.





Great! What do we need?

عظيم! ماذا نريد؟

4

Paper and string. Let's get some.

ورق وخيط. هيا بنا نحضر البعض.



B Listen and point to the speakers.

استمـع وأشِر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner.

تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.

Language Functions

1. Expressing and accepting compliments: التعبير عن المجاملات وقبولها :

e.g.

A: Wow! What a nice kite! — واوايا لها من طائرة ورقية جميلة!

B: Thanks. I made it by myself. — شكراً.صنعتها بنفسى/بمفردى.

2. Asking about and expressing likes: السؤال والتعبير عما نحب :

What do you like to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...? — ماذا تحب أن....؟

e.g.

A: What do you like to do? — ماذا تحب أن تفعل؟

B: I like to play ping-pong. — انا احب أن ألعب تنس الطاولة.

3. Offering: العرض:

Do you want to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل...? — هل تريد أن....؟

e.g.

A: Do you want to play? — هل تريد أن تلعب؟

B: Sure. — بالتأكيد.

Check point

Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 273

إدارة بورسعيد 2017

Eman : Wow! What a nice kite!

Judy : Thanks. I made it by (1) ....

Eman : (2) .... it hard?

Judy : No, it was (3) .... I'll show you.

Eman : Great! What (4) .... we need?

Judy : Paper and string. Let's get some.

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجـع. استمع وردد.

What do you like to do?
ماذا تحب أن تفعل؟

I like to play ping-pong.
أحب أن ألعب تنس الطاولة.



Do you want to play?
هل تريد أن تلعب؟

Sure.
بالتأكيـد.



- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (easy) ينطق/z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (sh) فى (show) ينطقان / ʃ / (ش).

Conversation Time
Exercise

1 Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

إدارة الخارجة 2018

Mazen : Wow! What a nice kite!

Nada : Thanks. I made it by myself.

Mazen : (1) .....was..... you kidding?

Nada : No, it's (2) .... I made it.

Mazen : Was it (3) ....?

Nada : No, it was easy. I'll (4) .... you.

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

kite - showed - string - nice - liked

Laila made a kite. It was a (1)....nice.... one. She showed it to Soha. Soha (2)....liked.... it very much. Laila used paper and (3)....string.... to make it. Soha wanted to make one. Laila (4)....showed.... her how to make another one.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة ... 2019

The children like to go to the summer camp. They like to play games. They like to make things by themselves. They can make kites. They need paper, string, tape and crayons. Kareem made one by himself. It was easy. He showed his friends how to make kites.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Kareem couldn't make a kite.	(..........)	(....✓....)
2. The children make things by themselves.	(....✓....)	(..........)
3. Kareem showed his friends how to make kites.	(....✓....)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What do the children need to make kites?

....

5. What do the children like to play?

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. it – No, – easy – was. إدارة المعادي 2019

....

2. it - myself – I – made – by. إدارة نقادة 2018

....

3. need – What – we – do? إدارة سمالوط 2018

....

4. do – you – How – a kite – make?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة بيلا 2018



....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1. what do you like to do/ ....

2. i ll show you. ....

معلومة من يونيسف

استخدم فرشاة أسنان جديدة كل ٣ أشهر لاتأكد من تنظيف أسنانى جيدًا

Word Time

Lesson 2

SB: p. (16) / WB: P. (14)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Fun activities:

أنشطة ترفيهية:


collect stickers
تجمع ملصقات


sing
تغنى


build a model
تبنى نموذجا


take a nap
يأخذ غفوة


read a comic book
يقرأ كتابا مضحكا


make a video
تصور فيديو


paint
تلون / تدهن


cycle
تركب دراجة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collected	paint	يلوّن / يدهن	painted
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled	finish	ينهى	finished
hurry	يسرع	hurried			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sing	يغنى	sang	build	يبنى	built
take	يأخذ	took	read	يقرأ	read
make	يصنع	made	know	يعرف	knew
win	يفـوز	won			

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

I don't know.	أنا لا أعرف.	No, not yet.	لا، ليس بعد.

معلومة من **يونيسف**



أهتم بالإفطار

لأنه أهم وجبة فى اليوم

A Listen and repeat. استمـع وردد.

1 collect stickers
2 sing
3 build a model
4 take a nap
5 read a comic book
6 make a video
7 paint
8 cycle

B Point and say the words. أشــر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers	
1.	collect	computer	sing	build	read	إدارة أخميم 2019
2.	book	model	video	sing	game	إدارة أشمون 2017
3.	he	she	we	her	it	إدارة أجا 2018
4.	songs	nap	stickers	videos	books	إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2017
5.	painted	take	sing	build	play	إدارة القوصية 2019

C Listen and point.

استمع وأشِر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers.

الآن، استمــع وأشــر إلــى المتحدثيــن.



Girl 1 : I won! I won!

- أنا فزت! أنا فزت.

Girl 2 : Congratulations! Do you want to play again?

- تهانينا/مبروك، هل تريد أن تلعب مرة أخرى؟

Girl 1 : Sure.

- بالتأكيد.



Girl 1 : Which one do you want?

- أي واحدة تريدين؟

Girl 2 : Oh, I don't know. They're all cute.

- أوه، أنا لا أعرف. إنهم جميعا جذابون.



Boy : Are you finished?

- هل أنتهيت؟

Girl : No, not yet.

- لا، ليس بعد.

Boy : Please hurry.

- من فضلك أسرعي.

Language Functions

Asking if someone has finished something:
السؤال عما إذا كان الشخص قد انتهى من عمل شيء ما:

e.g.

A: Are you finished?	هل انتهيت؟
B: No, not yet.	لا، ليس بعد.
A: Please hurry.	من فضلك اسرعي.

Check point

Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

2018

making – stickers – taking – comic – building

Today is a busy day. Hany is reading (1) ……………… books. Laila is (2) ……………… models. Their little sister is collecting (3) ……………… . Their father is (4) ……………… a nap and their mother is painting.

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى الصفحات (31 - 29) بالكتاب المدرسى.



Bb





C c



Mm



Pp



Rr



Ss

sing



Tt



- لاحظ أن حرف (c) فى (collect - comic - cycle) ينطق /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ck) فى (stickers) ينطقان /k/ (ك).
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) غالبًا ما ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (i - e - y) كما فى (cycle).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (sh) فى (finished) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش).

Word Time

Exercise

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	read	build	video	sing	....
2.	sticker	model	nap	paint	....
3.	Which	were	What	When	....
4.	finish	won	took	sang	....
5.	great	hurry	cute	nice	....

إدارة المنوفية 2018

إدارة مطاعة 2019

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They like to .... a nap in the afternoon. إدارة غرب الإسكندرية 2018
   a) take b) takes c) taking d) took
2. She doesn't like building a ....
   a) nap b) video c) model d) sticker
3. Ali likes to .... comic books. إدارة الرياض 2018
   a) reads b) read c) reading d) is reading
4. I don't .... They're all cute. إدارة العرانية 2019
   a) no b) now c) new d) know

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Today is Friday. It's our holiday. My mother is tired. She's taking a nap. My father is cycling. Kamal is reading comic books. Heba is building models. Laila is singing a song. Alaa is collecting stickers. Ahmed is painting a picture. Mona is making a video. They're all busy today.

A) **Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):**

	True	False
1. Laila is collecting stickers.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Mona is making a video.	(..........)	(..........)
3. My mother is happy. She's taking a nap.	(..........)	(..........)

B) **Answer the following questions:**

4. Who is painting a picture? ....

5. What is Heba doing? ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

إدارة طهطا 2018

1. all - They - cute - are.

....

إدارة عابدين 2019

2. like - We - to - stickers - collect.

....

إدارة المنيا 2018

3. you - Khaled - finished, - Are?

....

إدارة المنتزه 2018

4. build - How - you - a model - do?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة المستقبل 2017

(WB)



....

....

....

....

Practice Time

Lesson 3

SB: P. (17)/ WB: P. (15)

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

We like / She likes	singing, but	we don't / she doesn't	like building models.

build a model ⟶ building models

collect ⟶	collecting	sing ⟶	singing
build ⟶	building	take ⟶	taking
read ⟶	reading	make ⟶	making
paint ⟶	painting	cycle ⟶	cycling

STRUCTURE

Affirmative and Negative statements with "like + gerund":

استخدام "like + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing" فى الجمل المثبتة والمنفية:

Affirmative الإثبـــات

- للتعبير عما يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	like	(inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	likes	



e.g. I like singing.



e.g. He likes painting.

Negative النفي

- للتعبير عما لا يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	don't like	(inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ......
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	doesn't like	



e.g. We don't like collecting stickers.



e.g. She doesn't like reading comic books.

Conjunction "but": الرابط "لكن":

- تستخدم "but" بمعنى "لكن" للربط بين جملتين بينهما تناقض (اختلاف).



e.g. You like painting, but you don't like making videos.

Note

- عند انتهاء بعض الأفعال بحرف "e" مسبوق بحرف ساكن يحذف حرف الـ "e" عند إضافة الـ "ing":

e.g. - make ⟶ making - take ⟶ taking - cycle ⟶ cycling

Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ziad likes .... models. He is clever.

   a) build b) building c) builds d) built

2. She doesn't like .... stickers.

   a) collect b) collecting c) collected d) collects

3. We don't .... making videos.

   a) likes b) liked c) like d) to like

4. They .... like cycling.

   a) doesn't b) isn't c) don't d) aren't

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

1. I like making videos,
   but I don't like collecting stickers.



2. They ...like... collecting stickers,
   but they ...don't like... making videos.



3. She ...likes... cycling,
   but she donent like taking a nap.



He/ take a nap/cycle



④ He likes takeing a nap
but he doesn't cycle.

You/read comic books/ paint



⑤ You like read comic books,
but you don't like painting

She/paint/read comic books



⑥ she likes paniting ....,
....

B Look at page 16. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر صفحة 16 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1 He likes taking a nap, but he doesn't like singing.



S2 She likes painting, but she doesn't like cycling.



Practice Time
Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like .... videos.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
2. She likes .... She rides her bike every day.
   a) cycling b) reading c) climbing d) taking
3. You like .... comic books. (إدارة بنها 2019)
   a) playing b) reading c) listening d) growing
4. I like reading, but I .... like singing.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) aren't d) am not

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

(إدارة القاهرة 2019)

My father and my mother always let us do what we like. I like making kites. I use paper, string, tape and crayons to make them. My sister Heba likes building models, but she doesn't like painting pictures. My brother Hany likes cycling, but he doesn't like collecting stickers. I love my family very much.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. I don't like making kites.	(....................)	(....................)
2. Heba doesn't like painting pictures.	(....................)	(....................)
3. Hany doesn't like collecting stickers.	(....................)	(....................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Heba like? ....
5. Who likes cycling? ....

③ Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. like – cycling – he – Does? إدارة كفر الدوار 2018

....

2. She – like – doesn't – singing. إدارة المنتزه 2019

....

3. like – stickers – collecting – They – don't. إدارة قليــوب 2019

....

4. like - videos - Who - making - doesn't?

....

④ Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

....

....

....

....



⑤ Punctuate the following:

1. they cycle to school every day/ إدارة سمالوط 2015

....

2. who doesn t like painting?

....

معلومة من يونيسف

كل يوم أرتدى جوارب نظيفة

Phonics Time

Lesson 4

SB: P. (18)/ WB: P. (16)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى نطق الكلمات الآتية ولاحظ نطق "ur", "ir", "er":

er /3:/



clerk موظف كتابى

صحراء desert



dessert طبق الحلو بعد الأكل

ir /3:/



bird طائر



shirt قميص



dirt قذارة



skirt جيبة



girl بنت

13

thirteen ثلاثة عشر

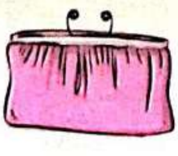


thirsty عطشان

ur /3:/



curry توابل هندية



purse حافظة نقود للسيدات



hurt يجرح



hurry يسرع



nurse ممرضة



burn يحرق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurry	يسرع	hurried	rip	يمزق	ripped
call	يستدعى/يتصل بـ	called			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يجرح	hurt	eat	يأكل	ate
burn	يحرق	burnt/burned			

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات و عبارات

in a hurry	فى عجالة (مستعجل)

Check point

Listen and circle:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. clerk - dessert
إدارة البساتين 2019

b. shirt - skirt
إدارة الساحل 2019

c. hurt - hurry
إدارة قطور 2017

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.




clerk


bird


curry


dessert


shirt


purse

B Listen and match.

استمع وصـل.

استمع وصل الأرقام بالكلمات التى تسمعها.

1. nurse 2. hurt 3. dirt 4. clerk 5. hurry 6. skirt

dirt hurt clerk skirt hurry nurse

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور. ثم استمع.

1. Kamal the clerk was in a hurry.
2. He ripped his shirt. He burned the curry.
3. He hurt his foot. He called a nurse.
4. And then he ate a big dessert.






Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. bird – dirt   b. nurse – purse   c. hurt – burn

إدارة مدينة نصر 2019   إدارة دشنا 2018

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	shirt	skirt	bird	jacket	skirt
2.	curry	hurry	dessert	cake	....
3.	ripped	burned	clerk	hurt	....
4.	ate	burned	call	ripped	....
5.	nurse	thirsty	clerk	girl	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

إدارة الواسطى 2018

burned - shirt - hurry - curry - hurt

Yesterday, I visited my uncle. He is a clerk. He was in a (1) .... He ripped his (2) .... He (3) .... his foot. He called a nurse. He (4) .... the food. And then, he ate a big dessert. I like my uncle.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. his – He – shirt – yesterday – ripped.

....

2. was – in – a – Kamal – hurry.

....

3. Harry – curry – the – burn – Did ?

....

4. is – your – What – dessert – favourite?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

....

....

....

....



Unit 10
Revision

Conversation Time

Mike : Wow! What a nice kite! — واو! يا لها من طائرة ورقية جميلة!

Laila : Thanks. I made it by myself. — شكرا. صنعتها بنفسي/بمفردي.

Mike : You're kidding! — أنت تمزحين!

Laila : No, it's true. I made it. — لا، إنه حقيقي. أنا صنعتها.

Mike : Was it hard? — هل كانت صعبة؟

Laila : No, it was easy. I'll show you. — لا ، كانت سهلة. سأوضح لك.

Mike : Great! What do we need? — عظيم! ماذا نريد؟

Laila : Paper and string. Let's get some. — ورق وخيط. هيا بنا نحضر البعض.

Word Time

collect stickers	sing	build a model
يجمع ملصقات	يغنى	يبنى نموذجا
take a nap	read a comic book	make a video
يأخذ غفوة	يقرأ كتابا مضحكًا	يصور فيديو
paint	cycle	
يلون/ يدهن	يركب دراجة	

Practice Time

Affirmative and Negative statements with "like + gerund":

استخدام "like + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing" فى الجمل المثبتة والمنفية.

Affirmative — الإثبات

- للتعبير عما يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

I / We / You / They/ اسم جمع → like
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → likes
> (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ....

e.g. We like painting.



e.g. She likes reading comic books.



Negative — النفى

- للتعبير عما لا يحب أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

I / We / You / They/ اسم جمع → don't like
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → doesn't like
> (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ....

e.g. I don't like making videos.



e.g. He doesn't like taking a nap.



Conjunction "but":

الرابط "لكن":

- تستخدم "but" بمعنى «لكن» للربط بين جملتين بينهما تناقض (اختلاف) :

e.g. Nour likes collecting stickers, but she doesn't like cycling.



Phonics Time

er /3ː/		ir /3ː/		ur /3ː/	
clerk	موظف كتابى	bird	طائر	curry	توابل هندية
dessert	طبق الحلو بعد الأكل	shirt	قميص	purse	حافظة نقود للسيدات
		dirt	قذارة	hurt	يجرح
		skirt	جيبة	hurry	يسرع
		girl	بنت	nurse	ممرضة
		thirteen	ثلاثة عشر	burn	يحرق
		thirsty	عطشان		

Writing Time

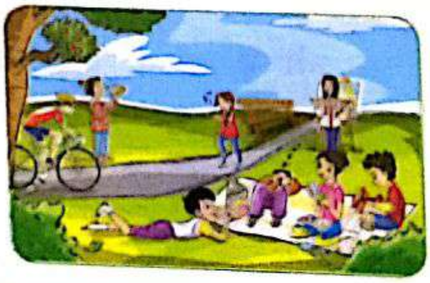
Answered Examples

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a) This is my kite. I made it by myself. I used paper, string and tape to make it. Then, I painted it with crayons.



(WB)

b) They are at the park. The girl is singing and the boy is building a model. Their father is taking a nap and their mother is painting. They are happy.



c) The clerk was in a hurry. He ripped his shirt and burned the curry. He hurt his foot and called the nurse. Then, he ate a big dessert.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

معسكر الصيف	....	إنه حقيقى	....
تنس الطاولة	....	ورق	....
خيط	....	شريط لاصق	....
يصنع	....	طائرة ورقيــة	....
أنت تمزح	....	عظيم	....

Word Time

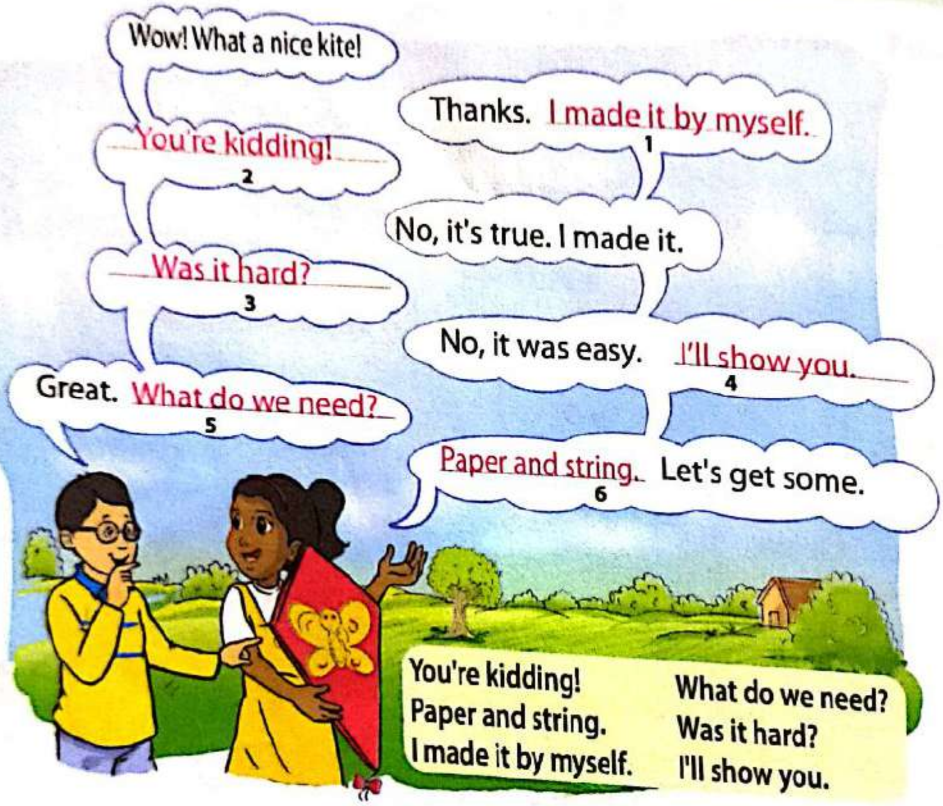
يأخذ غفوة	....	يجمع ملصقات	....
يبنى نموذجًا	....	يغنى	....
يصور فيديو	....	يلون/ يدهن	....
يقرأ كتابًا مضحكًا	....	يركب دراجة	....

Phonics Time

موظف كتابى	....	قميص	....
يسرع	....	طبق الحلو بعد الأكل	....
ممرضة	....	توابل هندية	....
ثلاثة عشر	....	يجرح	....
يحرق	....	حافظة نقود للسيدات	....
عطشـان	....	جيبة	....

Workbook
Conversation Time

A **Fill in the blanks.**



B **Read and match.**

1. Was it easy?
No, it was hard.

2. What a cool kite!
Yeah, Sara made it.

3. What do we need?
Tape, paper and crayons.

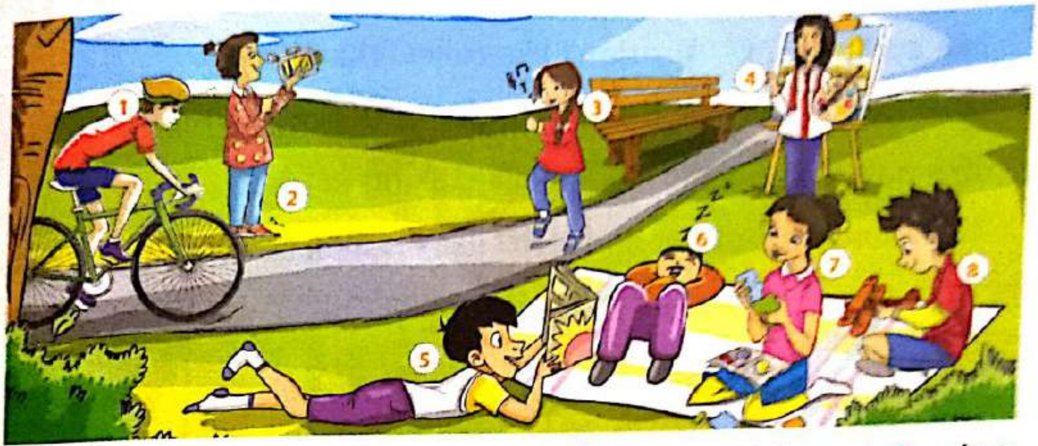






Workbook
Word Time

A **Look. Then number the words.**



1 cycle 5 read a comic book 7 collect stickers 3 sing

4 paint 6 take a nap 2 make a video 8 build a model

B **What will they do in the summer? Look and write.**

1.


2.


3.


4.


5.


6.


7.


8.


1. He'll collect stickers.
2. She'll sing.
3. They'll read a comic book.
4. She'll cycle.
5. He'll build a model.
6. They'll take a nap.
7. She'll paint.
8. They'll make a video.

Workbook
Practice Time

A Read and write. Then number the pictures.

1. I like cycling, but I don't like collecting stickers.
2. She likes making videos, but she doesn't like building models.
3. We like painting, but we don't like taking naps.
4. She likes singing, but she doesn't like reading comic books.









B Look and write.






1. 
She likes singing, but she doesn't like cycling.

2. 
He likes reading comic books, but he doesn't like painting.

3. 
They like building models, but they don't like taking naps.

4. 
She likes collecting stickers, but she doesn't like making videos.

Workbook

Phonics Time

A Does it have er, ir, or ur? Circle and write.

1. 

er ur ir

bird

2. 

ur er ir

curry

3. 

ir ur er

dessert

4. 

ur ir er

girl

5. 

ir er ur

dirty

6. 

er ir ur

nurse

7. 

ir ur er

purse

8. 

ur er ir

shirt

A Fill in the blanks.

thirteen
shirt
dirty
thirsty
hurts
dessert
Curry
bird
girl
purse

1. It can fly. It's small. It's a bird .
2. Curry is my favourite. I eat it with rice.
3. Chocolate cake is my favourite dessert .
4. Kareem is a boy. Mona is a girl .
5. My keys and my wallet are in my purse .
6. The kitchen is dirty . Let's clean up.
7. I want iced tea. I'm thirsty .
8. Ouch! My foot hurts !
9. Ten and three is thirteen .
10. Fady bought jeans and a shirt .

Unit 10

Test 1

40



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. bird – dirt   b. thirsty – thirteen   c. clerk – dessert

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

Kareem : Wow! What a nice kite!

Yasser : Thanks. I made it by myself.

Kareem : (1)................... you kidding?

Yasser : No, it's (2)................... . I made it.

Kareem : (3)................... it hard?

Yasser : No, it was easy. I'll (4)................... you.



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	build	read	sing	comic	....
2.	take	video	sticker	book	....
3.	clerk	nurse	doctor	dessert	....
4.	curry	shirt	sandwich	pizza	....
5.	hurry	hurt	cute	eat	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. I like singing, ... I don't like painting.

a) and b) but c) with d) for

2. Sarah likes to .... a video.

a) make b) take c) build d) read

3. We like .... stickers.

a) collected b) collects c) collect d) collecting

4. We need string and .... to make a kite.

a) paper b) violin c) moon d) house

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

Yara is ten years old. Her father is a teacher. Her mother is a housewife. She has two brothers, Magdi and Omar. Magdi likes painting, but he doesn't like making videos. Omar likes singing, but he doesn't like collecting stickers. Yara likes cycling, but she doesn't like taking a nap.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Yara is eleven years old.	(....................)	(.........✓.........)
2. Yara's father is a teacher.	(.........✓.........)	(....................)
3. Omar doesn't like collecing stickers.	(....................)	(.........✓.........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Magdi like to do? ....

5. Who likes cycling? ....



C. Writing

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** 6

1. kite – a – What – nice!

whatanicekite!

2. in – you – Were – a – hurry?

wereyouinahurry?

3. it – Was – hard – easy – or?

wasithardoreasy?

4. books – likes – Omar – comic – reading.

omarlikesbook comicreading.

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:** 6

I canseeat school. sheishappy close

monaisaplant flowes.



8 **Punctuate the following:** 2

1. Are ahmed and Sarah happy/

A ?

2. She isn t going to cairo.

S ' C ?

Units 9 & 10 Test

Selected from School Exams

40



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. zoo – moon	b. nurse – purse	c. hurry – curry
إدارة بنى مزار 2018	إدارة عين شمس 2018	إدارة بنى مزار 2019

2 Listen and complete:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

إدارة شبين الكوم 2017

Kareem : How are you?
Samy : I'm fine, thanks.
Kareem : What do you (1).......................... doing?
Samy : I like playing (2).......................... .
Kareem : (3).......................... you play with your brother?
Samy : No, I don't. He likes (4).......................... .



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

5

					Answers	
1.	sing	have	collect	bird	....	إدارة شرق الفيوم 2018
2.	collect	build	wood	snorkel	....	إدارة سمالوط 2018
3.	clown	clerk	model	vet	....	إدارة الفشن 2019
4.	shirts	football	jeans	skirts	....	إدارة طامية 2019
5.	cycling	painting	singing	string	....	إدارة طوخ 2017

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

4

music - skate - volleyball - build - fishing

2018

There are a lot of things that we can do by the seashore. People can play (1) volleyball They can listen to (2) music. They can go (3) Fishing They can in-line (4) skate, too.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

2018

Ramy and Samir are brothers. Ramy is ten years old. He is two years older than Samir. They are on holiday with their parents now. Ramy likes swimming. Samir likes going fishing. Samir, Ramy and their father are playing football. Their mother is listening to music and cooking lunch. They are very happy.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Ramy and Samir are friends.	(..........)	(....✓....)
2. Samir is seven years old.	(..........)	(....✓....)
3. Ramy is seven years old.	(..........)	(....✓....)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Samir like?

....

5. How old is Samir?

He is 4 ....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6)

1. one - want - Which - you - do? — إدارة أبو النمرس 2019

....

2. need - do - we - What? — إدارة أبو قرقاص 2018

....

3. made - I - by - myself - it - yesterday. — إدارة بولاق الدكرور 2019

....

4. time - we'll - This - win. — إدارة المنيا 2018

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: (6)

إدارة أشمون 2019



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2)

1. what does mariam like to do? — إدارة المنتزه 2017

....

2. kareem doesn t like to in-line skate. — إدارة أشمون 2017

....

Unit 11

At the Planetarium

في مبنى القبة السماوية



Unit Objectives

أهداف الوحدة

Conversation Time

- Request permission. • طلب الإذن.
- Deny requests. • رفض الطلبات.
- Express wants. • التعبير عن الرغبات.
- Identify speakers in a conversation.
  • التعرف إلى المتحدثين في محادثة.

Word Time

- Write sentences. • كتابة جمل.
- Read sentences. • قراءة جمل.
- Learn vocabulary: Planets.
  • تعلم المفردات اللغوية: الكواكب.

Practice Time

- Express imperatives. • التعبير عن الأمر.
- Use simple present with "want to + infinitive"
  • استخدام "want to+ infinitive" في زمن المضارع البسيط.
- Recognize object pronouns.
  • التعرف على ضمائر المفعول.
- Use imperatives. • استخدام صيغة الأمر.

Phonics Time

- Distinguish between sounds of "oi, oy"
  • التمييز بين صوتي "oi , oy".
- Associate sound of letters with written form
  • الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين

WB تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات

تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

Lesson 1

SB: P. 19/ WB: P. (17)

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

planetarium	مبنى القبة السماوية	all	كل	planets	كواكب
stars	نجوم	show	عرض	Miss	أستاذة
gift shop	محل هدايا	kids children	أطفال	snack bar	مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة
gift present	هدية	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	time	وقت
please	من فضلك				

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

museum	متحف	today	اليوم
lunch	وجبة الغداء	some	بعض
dinner	وجبة العشاء	bookstore (WB)	متجر/ مكتبة لبيع الكتب

breakfast إفطار
supper عشاء

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
want	يريد	wanted

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	can	يستطيع	could
buy	يشترى	bought	catch	يلحق بـ/يمسك	caught

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

We don't have time.	ليس لدينا وقت.	catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس

Characters of the conversation شخصيات المحادثة



Kim



Ramy



Miss Nadia

Story of the conversation قصة المحادثة

- The students are at the planetarium. Kim wants to go to the snack bar, and Ramy wants to go to the gift shop. Miss Nadia says, "No" because they have to catch the bus.

التلاميذ فى مبنى القبة السماوية. تريد كيم الذهاب إلى مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة ويريد رامى الذهاب إلى محل الهدايا. أستاذة نادية تقول "لا" لأن عليهم اللحاق بالأتوبيس.

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

1



Wow! Did you see all the planets and stars?

واو! هل رأيت الكواكب والنجوم؟



Yeah! That was a great show.

نعم! إنه كان عرضًا عظيمًا.

2



Miss Nadia, can we go to the snack bar?

أستاذة نادية، هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة؟



Can we go to the gift shop?

هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى محل الهدايا؟

3



No, kids. We don't have time.

لا يا أطفال. ليس لدينا وقت.

4



Aw. But I want to buy a gift for my dad.

أوه. لكن أنا أريد أن أشترى هدية لوالدى.



And I'm thirsty.

وأنا عطشان.

5



Please, Miss Nadia. We'll hurry.

من فضلك، أستاذة نادية، سنسرع.



Sorry, kids. We have to catch the bus.

آسفة، يا أطفال، يجب أن نلحق بالأتوبيس.

B Listen and point to the speakers. استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with two other students. تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع تلميذين آخرين.

Language Functions

1. Requesting permission: طلب الإذن:

Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل..... ? هل يمكن ......؟

e.g.

- Can we go to the snack bar? هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة؟

or

- Can we go to the gift shop? هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى محل الهدايا؟

2. Denying/Refusing request: رفض الطلب:

e.g.

- No, kids. We don't have time. لا، يا أطفال. ليس لدينا وقت.

3. Apologising: الاعتذار:

e.g.

- Sorry, kids. We have to catch the bus. آسفة، يا أطفال. يجب أن نلحق بالأتوبيس.

Note

Subject (الفاعل) + have/has to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... يجب أن (للضرورة) ......

- We have to catch the bus.

4. Expressing physical states: التعبير عن الحالات الجسدية:

Subject (الفاعل) + v. to "be" (am/is/are) + adjective (صفة).

e.g.

- I'm thirsty. أنا عطشان.

or

- I'm hungry. أنا جوعان.

Check point

Listen and complete:

راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

Hoda : Did you see all the planets and stars?
Ali : Yeah! That was a great (1) ....
Hoda : Can we go to the (2) .... bar?
Miss Fatma: No, we don't (3) .... time.
Hoda : Can we go to the gift (4) .... ?
Miss Fatma: Sorry, Hoda. We have to catch the bus.

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجع. استمع وردد.

I saw a film at the museum today.
رأيت فيلم فى المتحف اليوم.

Did you have lunch at the museum?
هل تناولت وجبة الغذاء فى المتحف؟



No, I didn't. I'm hungry.
لا، أنا جائع.

Let's have some dinner.
هيا بنا نتناول وجبة العشاء.



- لاحظ ان حرفى (sh) فى (shop) ينطقان /ʃ/(ش).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (ck) فى (snack) ينطقان /k/(ك).
- لاحظ ان الحروف (tch) فى (catch) تنطق /tʃ/(تش) .
- لاحظ ان حرفى (ch) فى (lunch) ينطقان /tʃ/(تش) .
- لاحظ ان حرف (s) فى (museum - kids) ينطق /z/(ز).

Conversation Time
Exercise

1 Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

إدارة مغاغة 2018

Nada : Wow! It was a great show.

Miss Noha : Yeah! (1)...................... you see all the planets and stars?

Nada : Yes, I did. Can I go to the (2)...................... shop?

Miss Noha : Sorry, we (3)...................... have time.

Nada : But I want to buy a gift for my dad, Miss Noha.

Miss Noha : We have to catch the (4)...................... .

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

إدارة قليوب 2019

buy - planets - hungry - bar - plants

Hany and his friend Tarek went to the planetarium yesterday. They saw the (1)....Planets.... and stars. Then, they went to the snack (2)....bar.......... . They were (3)....hungry.... . They ate some sandwiches. They wanted to go to the gift shop to (4)....buy...... a gift for Tarek's dad.

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة المطرية 2017

Yesterday, we went to the planetarium. We saw the planets and stars. It was a great show. The sun is very big. We went to the gift shop. I bought a gift for my dad. Then, we went to the snack bar to have a snack. We were in a hurry. We had to catch the bus. It was a nice day.

A. Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. We went to the gift shop to have a snack.	(..................)	(.......✓.......)
2. I bought a gift for my mum.	(..................)	(.......✓.......)
3. We saw the planets and stars.	(.......✓.......)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did you go to the planetarium?

Yesterday ....

5. Why were you in a hurry?

....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. have - some - Let's - dinner. — إدارة الوايلى 2017

....

2. go - bar - Can - we - the - to - snack? — إدارة دسوق 2019

....

3. see - Did - you - planets - all - the? — إدارة بنى مزار 2018

....

4. museum - today - a film - I - at - the - saw. — إدارة كفر الدوار 2019

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة أخميم 2019



....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1. i didn t see the film yesterday. I ....

2. Wow did you see the planets? ....

معلومة من يونيسف

أستحم بالماء والصابون كل يوم فى الصيف وفى الشتاء

Word Time

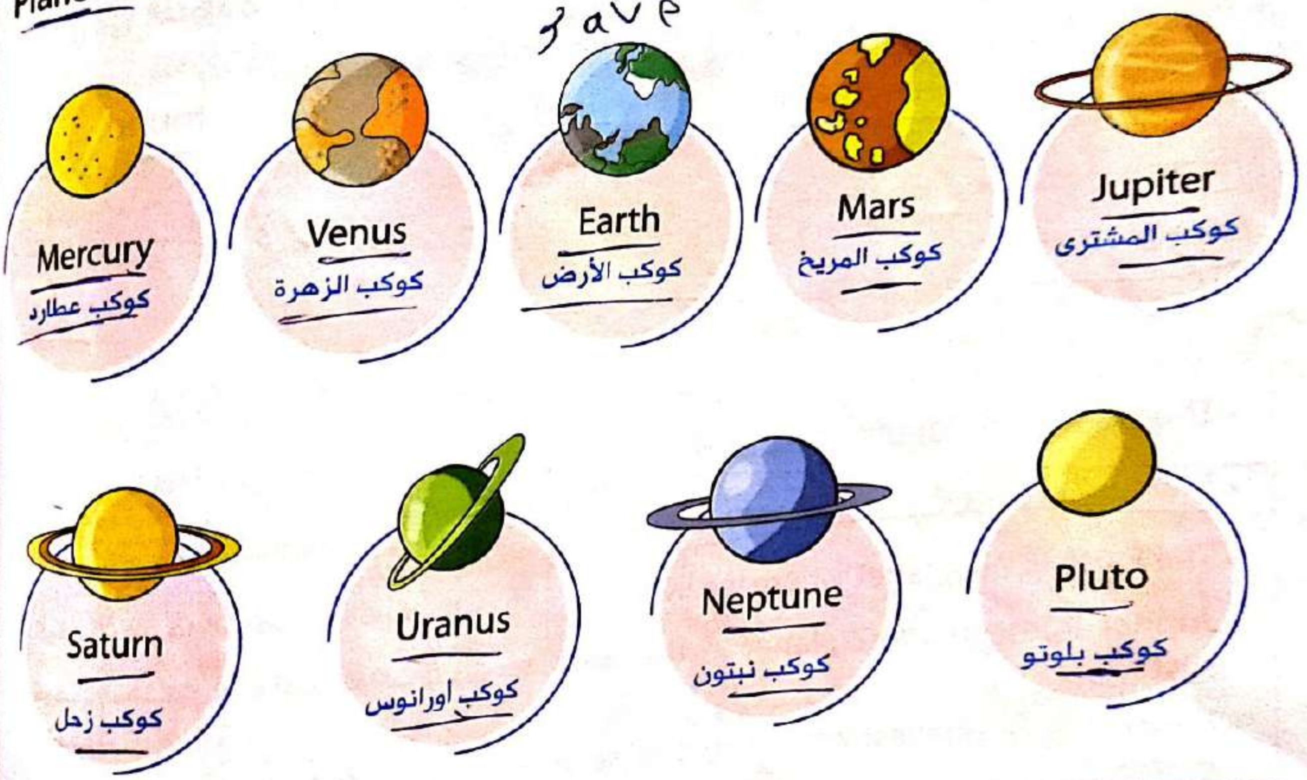
Lesson 2

SB: P. 20/ WB: P. 18

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

الكـــواكـــب:

Planets:



المفردات اللغوية

Vocabulary			
ticket	تذكرة	camera	كاميرا
picture	صورة	teacher	معلم / معلمة
smaller than (WB)	أصغر من	bigger than (WB)	اكبر من
the smallest (WB)	الأصغر	the biggest	الأكبر

حروف الجر

Prepositions	
next to (WB)	بجوار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped	live (WB)	يعيش	lived

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
take	يأخذ	took	find	يجد	found

Expressions and phrases تعبيرات وعبارات

take pictures	يلتقط صورا	Me, too.	وأنا أيضا

Notes

• There are nine planets in the solar system.	• يوجد تسعة كواكب فى المجموعة الشمسية.
• Mercury is the closest planet to the sun.	• كوكب عطارد هو أقرب الكواكب إلى الشمس.
• The Earth is the planet where we live.	• كوكب الأرض هو الكوكب الذى نعيش عليه.
• Jupiter is the biggest planet in the solar system.	• كوكب المشترى هو اكبر كواكب المجموعة الشمسية.
• Pluto is the smallest planet in the solar system.	• كوكب بلوتو هو أصغر كواكب المجموعة الشمسية.
• Pluto is the furthest planet from the sun.	• كوكب بلوتو هو أبعد الكواكب إلى الشمس.

• جميع كواكب المجموعة الشمسية تبدأ بحرف كبير (capital letter):

e.g. • We live on the Earth.

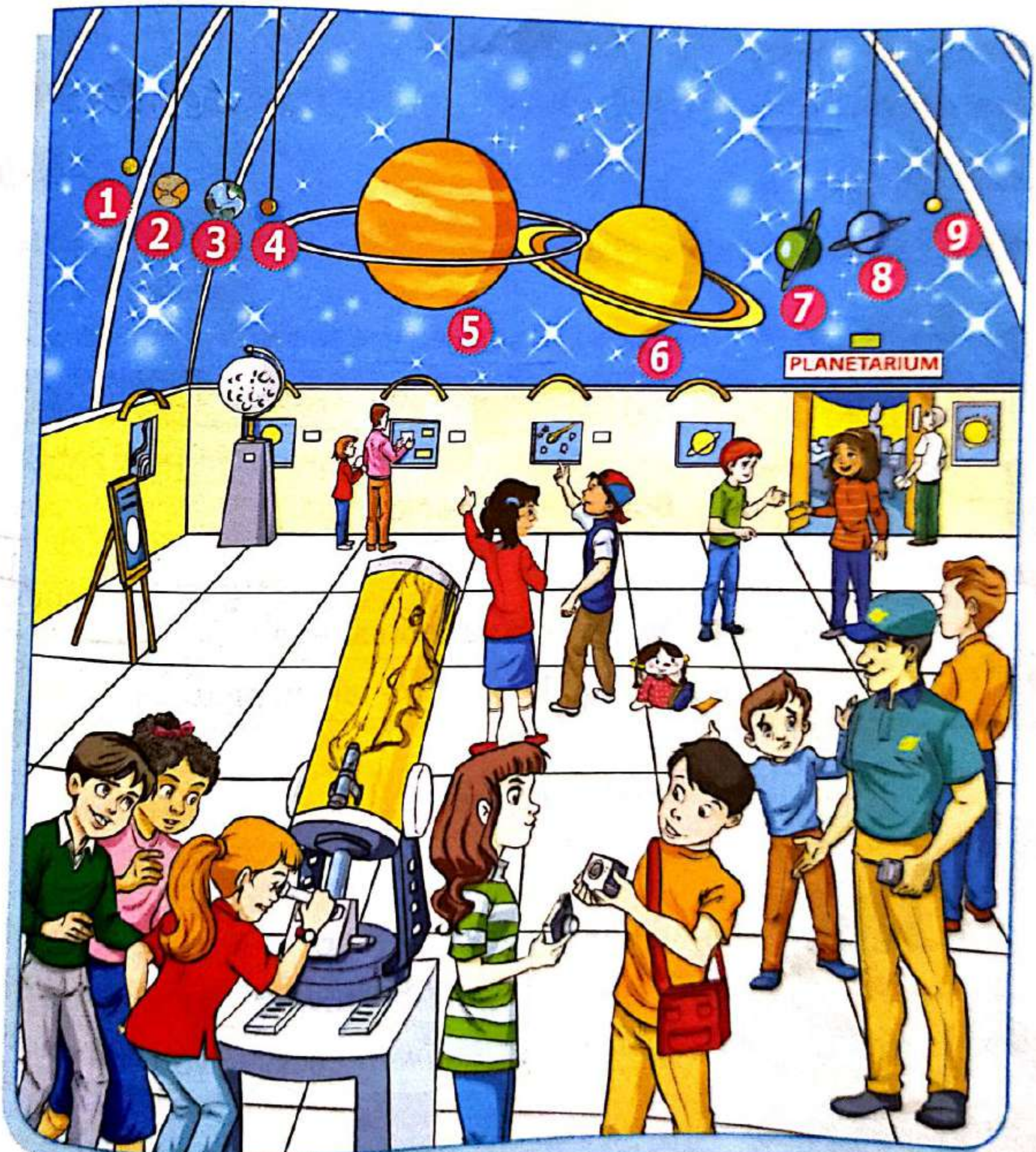
A Listen and repeat.

استمـــع وردد.

1 Mercury
2 Venus
3 Earth
4 Mars
5 Jupiter
6 Saturn
7 Uranus
8 Neptune
9 Pluto

B Point and say the words.

أشـــــر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers	
1.	Venus	Saturn	snack	Jupiter	Mars	إدارة المطرية 2017
2.	aquarium	planetarium	zoo	planets	....	إدارة أشمون 2018
3.	Neptune	Nader	Nabil	Nagy	....	
4.	Mercury	thirsty	hungry	hot	....	
5.	Mars	March	Earth	Mercury	Venus	إدارة أسيوط 2017

C Listen and point. استمع وأشِر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.



Boy : Did you see the show? هل شاهدت العرض؟

Girl : Yes. It was cool. Here's a ticket. نعم، كان لطيف. تفضل تذكرة.

Boy : Wow! Thanks. واو! شكرا.



Boy : That's a cool camera. إنها كاميرا رائعة.

Girl : Thanks. I like taking pictures. شكرا. انا أحب التقاط الصور.

Boy : Me, too. وانا أيضا.



Worker : What's wrong? ما الأمر / مما تشكو؟

Boy : I can't find my teacher. لا أستطيع أن أجد معلمي.

Worker : Don't worry. I'll help you find your teacher. لا تقلق سأساعدك أن تجد معلمك.

Language Functions

1. Expressing likes:
التعبير عما نحب:

like + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing..... .

- I like taking pictures.

أنا أحب أن التقط صورًا.

2. Asking about and stating a problem:
السؤال عن وذكر مشكلة:

A : What's wrong?
ما الأمر/مم تشكو؟

B : I can't find my teacher.
لا استطيع ان اجد معلمتى.

Note

Subject (الفاعل) + can/can't + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) .... .

- I can't find my teacher.

3. Offering help:
عرض المساعدة:

- Don't worry. I'll help you find your teacher.

لا تقلق. سأساعدك أن تجد معلمتك.

Note

مقارنة الصفات:

Comparison of adjectives:

• المقارنة بين اثنين:

• Comparative:

- عند المقارنة بين (شخصين ، حيوانين ، شيئين ....إلخ) يزيد أحدهما عن الآخر فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد):

adjective (الصفة) + er + than

- Venus is smaller than the Earth.
- Jupiter is bigger than Pluto.

• صيغة التفضيل العليا (المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة):

• Superlative:

- عند المقارنة بين واحد ومجموعة فى صفة ما قصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) نضيف "the" قبل الصفة ونضيف "est" بعدها:

the + adjective (الصفة) + est

- Pluto is the smallest planet.
- Mercury is the closest to the sun.

Check point

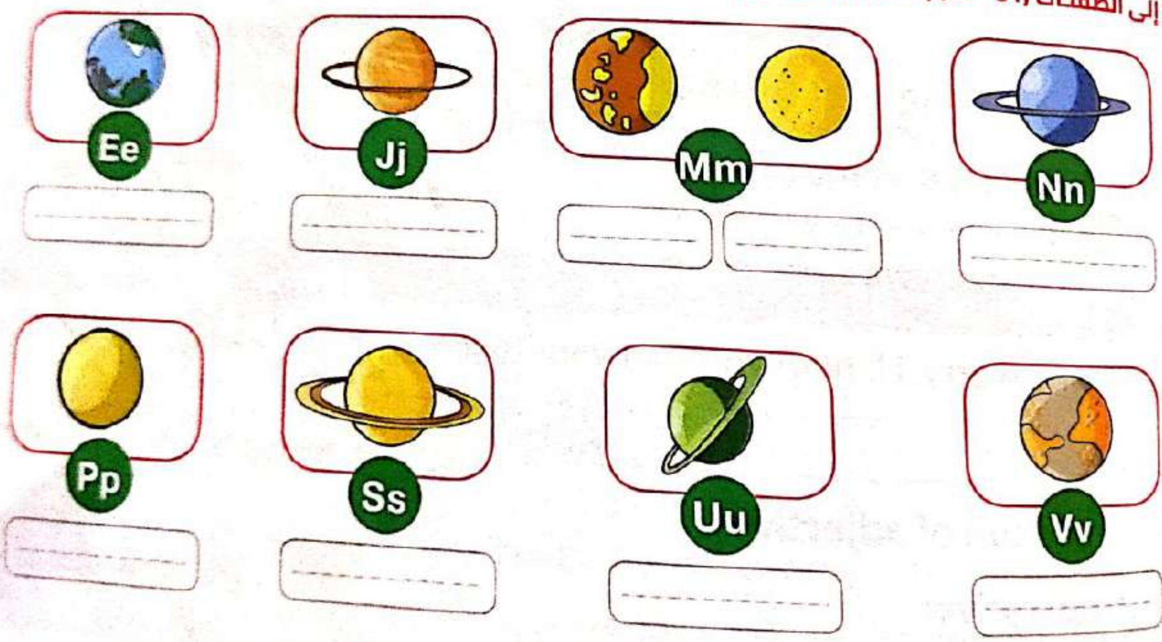
Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

biggest – planets – closest – stars – Earth

We went to the planetarium yesterday. There are nine (1)................ in the solar system. They are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. We live on the (2).................. Jupiter is the (3)................ planet. Pluto is the smallest one. Mercury is the (4)..................... to the sun.

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات.
انظر إلى الصفحات (31 - 29) بالكتاب المدرسي.





- لاحظ أن حرف (c) فى (Mercury) ينطق /k/(ك).
- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (Mars) ينطق /z/(ز).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (Earth) ينطقان /θ/(ث).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ck) فى (ticket) ينطقان /k/(ك).
- لاحظ أن حرف (w) فى (wrong) لا ينطق "silent".
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ch) فى (teacher) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش).

Word Time Exercise

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	teacher	nurse	Venus	doctor	....
2.	Mercury	Pluto	Neptune	school	Mars
3.	Mars	next to	between	behind	~~Plas~~ → on
4.	picture	ticket	camera	take	....
5.	When	worry	What	Where	Were

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A: .... is the biggest planet? B: Jupiter.

a) Where b) Who c) When d) What

2. We live on the ....

إدارة أسوان 2019

a) Earth b) Neptune c) Mars d) Mercury

3. .... is a planet.

a) March b) Cairo c) Pluto d) Friday

4. There are nine planets .... the solar system.

a) on b) at c) in d) of

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة دمياط 2019

We went to the planetarium with our teachers and friends. We wanted to go to the snack bar, but we didn't have time. We saw the show. It was great. We saw Jupiter, Saturn and Mars. I liked Jupiter. It has beautiful colours. Alaa liked Saturn. It is wonderful with a nice circle around it. We spent a nice time there.

Unit 11

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. They went to the snack bar.	(..........)	(..........)
2. We saw three planets.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Mars is beautiful with a nice circle around it.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who did you go to the planetarium with? ....

5. Why did you like Jupiter? ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. camera – a – That's – cool.

....

2. see – Did – show – the – you?

....

3. she – taking – like – pictures – Does?

....

4. help – find – you – I'll – teacher – your.

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

....

....

....

....



Practice Time

Lesson 3

SB: P. 21 / WB: P. 19

A Listen and repeat. استمـع وردد.

I want He wants	to see Mercury. Let	me him	look.

I → me	he → him	she → her
we → us	they → them	

STRUCTURE

Simple present with "want to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل":

استخدام "مصدر الفعل (inf.) + want to" فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

• للتعبير عما يريد أن يفعله شخص أو مجموعة من الأشخاص:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	want to	• .... مصدر الفعل (inf.)
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	wants to	

e.g.
- I want to see Jupiter.
- He wants to see Uranus.

الضمائر:

Pronouns:

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول
I	me
He	him
She	her
It	it
We	us
You	you
They	them

• تأتى ضمائر الفاعل "subject pronouns" فى بداية الجملة وقبل الفعل:

e.g. • I want to see Neptune. • She wants to see Pluto.

• تأتى ضمائر المفعول "object pronouns" بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر:

e.g. • Let them look. • I give my car to her.

Note

Let + object pronoun (ضمير المفعول) + (inf.)مصدر الفعل .

e.g. • I want to see Mercury. Let me look. • She wants to see Venus. Let her look.

Imperative:

الأمر:

• لأمر شخص بفعل شىء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل (Inf.):

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل ....

e.g. • Let him look. • Wash your hands.

• لأمر شخص بعدم فعل شىء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .....

e.g. • Don't let him look. • Don't wash your hands.

Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to see Pluto. Let .... look. إدارة سمنود 2017

a) him b) them c) me d) her

2. Mona wants to see Venus. Let her .... إدارة السرابة 2018

a) looks b) looking c) looked d) look

3. .... wants to see Mercury. Let him look. إدارة بسيون 2019

a) She b) He c) I d) They

4. We .... to see Jupiter. Let us look.

a) wants b) wanting c) want d) wanted

B Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner. استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

1. She wants to see Mars. Let her look.

She/ Mars



2. They want to see Saturn. Let them look.

They/ Saturn



I/ Jupiter



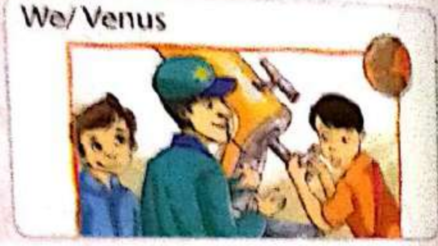
I .... Jupiter. Let .... look.

He/ Neptune



He .... Neptune. Let him look.

We/ Venus



....

She/ Pluto



....

C Look at page 20. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر صفحة 20 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:



S1 He wants to see Mars.

S2 Let him look.

Practice Time
Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She .... to see Jupiter yesterday.
   a) want b) wanted c) wants d) to want
2. I want to see the moon. Let .... look. (WB)
   a) him b) me c) us d) them
3. The .... is our planet.
   a) Earth b) Mars c) Saturn d) Jupiter
4. I want to .... Neptune. Let me look.
   a) take b) see c) look d) sea

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Yesterday was a holiday. Dalia went on a school trip to the planetarium with her school friends. They took the bus at seven and they arrived at ten. Dalia drank orange juice. They took a lot of pictures. They enjoyed watching all the planets and stars. They bought a lot of gifts for their families. It was a good day.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Dalia is a driver.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Dalia and her friends liked the trip.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Dalia and her friends arrived at seven.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Dalia and her friends watch at the planetarium? ....
5. How did Dalia and her friends go to the planetarium? ....

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. want - Mars - They - see - to. إدارة المطرية 2019

....

2. is - Pluto - bigger - Jupiter - than.

....

3. to - go - the - Did - you - planetarium?

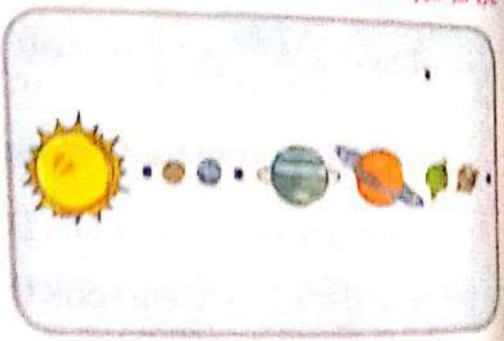
....

4. planets - you - all - Did - the - see? إدارة أبو قرقاص 2017

....

4 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة كفر الدوار 2019



....

....

....

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what do you want to see/ إدارة شبين القوم 2017

....

2. We live on earth, ali.

....

معلومة من بونيسة

أهم ما في طبقك الصحي كميات متوازنة من البروتينات والحبوب والخضراوات والفاكهة

Phonics Time

Lesson 4

SB: P. 22/ WB : P. 20

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

استمع إلى نطق الكلمات الآتية ولاحظ نطق "oy" و "oi":

oi /ɔɪ/


boil يغلي


oil زيت


point يشير


join ينضم إلى


boiled مسلوق/مغلي


broiled مشوي


foil ورق فويل (ورق معدني)


spoil يتلف/ يفسد


coin عملة معدنية

oy /ɔɪ/


boy ولد boys أولاد


joy بهجة /فرح


oyster محار


Roy روي (اسم ولد)


toy لعبة


soy فول الصويا

Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

son ابن | sauce (WB) صلصة

Conjugation of verbs | تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs | الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
point	يشير	pointed	frown	يعبس / يقطب	frowned
love	يحب	loved	jump	يقفز	jumped

Irregular verbs | الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put	يضع	put	spoil (WB)	يفسد / يتلف	spoilt/spoiled

Check point

Listen and circle:

a. oil - coin (2017)   b. boil - spoil (2019)   c. joy - soy (2018)

A Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.



B **Do they both have the same vowel sound? Listen and circle ✓ or ✗.**

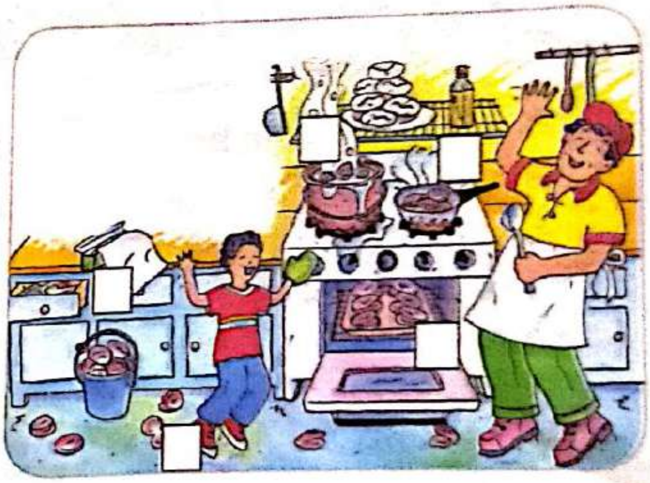
هل كلتا الكلمتين بهما نفس صوت الحرف المتحرك؟ استمع وضع ✓ أو ✗.

1. ☐ Roy boil
2. ☐ join joy
3. ☐ nose toy
4. ☐ soy son
5. ☐ frown boys

C **Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.**

اقرأ الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور. ثم استمع.

1. Roy and the boy loved oysters.
   They loved them boiled.
2. They loved them broiled.
3. They loved them cooked in oil.
4. They put them in foil.
5. And jumped and jumped for joy!



Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. soy - oyster
إدارة عين شمس 2018

b. broil - join
إدارة بنى مزار 2018

c. boy - toy
إدارة بسيون 2019

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	soy	oyster	cook	eggs	rice
2.	boil	broil	join	sauce	joy
3.	foil	sister	mother	son	Father
4.	oil	water	juice	cake	orange juice
5.	jump	frown	oil	point	play

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

إدارة السنطة 2018

join – foil – oysters – cooked – for

(WB)

Roy and his sister were in the kitchen. They loved (1) cooked. They loved them broiled. They loved them (2) oysters in oil. They put them in (3) join .... and jumped (4) For .... joy!

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. jumped - They - joy - for.

....

2. broiled – likes – oysters – Ali.

....

3. foil – they – in – Did – put – oysters?

....

4. did – Where – put – Roy – the oysters?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

....

....

Unit 11
Revision

Conversation Time

Kim	: Wow! Did you see all the planets and stars?	- واو! هل رأيت كل الكواكب والنجوم؟
Ramy	: Yeah! That was a great show.	- نعم! إنه كان عرضا عظيما.
Kim	: Miss Nadia, can we go to the snack bar?	- أستاذة نادية، هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة؟
Ramy	: Can we go to the gift shop?	- هل يمكننا الذهاب إلى محل الهدايا؟
Miss Nadia	: No, kids. We don't have time.	- لا، يا أطفال. ليس لدينا وقت.
Kim	: Aw. But I want to buy a gift for my dad.	- أوو. لكن أنا أريد أن أشترى هدية لوالدى.
Ramy	: And I'm thirsty.	- وأنا عطشان.
Kim	: Please, Miss Nadia. We'll hurry.	- من فضلك، أستاذة نادية. سنسرع.
Miss Nadia	: Sorry, kids. We have to catch the bus.	- آسفة، يا أطفال. يجب أن نلحق بالأتوبيس.

Word Time

Mercury	Venus	Earth
كوكب عطارد	كوكب الزهرة	كوكب الأرض
Mars	Jupiter	Saturn
كوكب المريخ	كوكب المشترى	كوكب زحل
Uranus	Neptune	Pluto
كوكب أورانوس	كوكب نبتون	كوكب بلوتو

Practice Time

Simple present with "want to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل":

استخدام "مصدر الفعل (inf.) + want to" فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

I / We /You / They / اسم جمع → want to
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → wants to
→ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ......

e.g.
- We want to see Uranus.
- She wants to see Pluto.

الضمائر:

Pronouns:

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول
I	me
He	him
She	her
It	it
We	us
You	you
They	them

- تأتى ضمائر الفاعل "subject pronouns" فى بداية الجملة وقبل الفعل:

e.g. • He wants to see Saturn.

- تأتى ضمائر المفعول "object pronouns" بعد الفعل:

e.g. • Let her look.

الأمر:

Imperative:

- لأمر شخص بفعل شىء ما نبدأ الجملة بمصدر الفعل (Inf.):

(Inf.) مصدر الفعل ......

e.g. • Let him look.

- لأمر شخص بعدم فعل شىء ما:

Don't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ......

e.g. • Don't let him look.

Phonics Time

oi /ɔɪ/		oy /ɔɪ/	
boil	يغلى	boy /boys	ولد/أولاد
oil	زيت	joy	بهجة/ فرح
point	يشير	oyster	محار
join	ينضم إلى	Roy	روى (اسم ولد)
boiled	مسلوق/مغلى	toy	لعبة
broiled	مشوى	soy	فول الصويا
foil	ورق فويل (ورق معدنى)		
spoil	يتلف / يفسد		
coin	عملة معدنية		

Writing Time

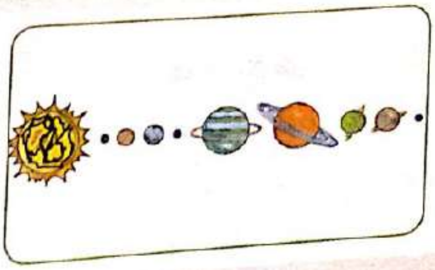
Answered Examples

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a Last Friday, I went to the planetarium with my friends. We saw all the planets and stars. It was a great show. We went to the gift shop to buy some gifts.



b There are nine planets in the solar system. Jupiter is the biggest planet. Pluto is the smallest one. Mercury is the closest to the sun.



c Roy and the boy love oysters. They love them boiled, broiled and cooked in oil. They put them in foil. They jump and jump for joy.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

مبنى القبة السماوية	....	عطشان	....
يلحق الأوتوبيس	....	عرض	....
مطعم الوجبات الخفيفة	....	ليس لدينا وقت	....
اطفـال	....	محل الهدايـا	....
كواكب	....	يريد	....

Word Time

كوكب عطارد	....	كوكب الأرض	....
كوكب الزهرة	....	كوكب المشترى	....
كوكب المريخ	....	كوكب بلوتو	....
كوكب زحل	....	كوكب أورانوس	....
كوكب نبتون	....		

Phonics Time

عملة معدنية	....	زيـت	....
بهجة/ فـرح	....	ولد	....
مشوى	....	يغلى	....
لعبة	....	فول الصويا	....
يتلف	....	ينضم إلى	....
ورق فويل (ورق معدنى)	....	محـار	....

Workbook
Conversation Time

A Fill in the blanks. Use some words twice.

Can	No	We	hurry	thirsty	buy	show
Yeah	a	planets	the	snack	We	great
Wow	I'm	catch	stars	bus	gift	time

1. Wow ! Did you see all the planets and stars ?
2. Yeah ! That was a great show .
3. Miss Nadia, can we go to the snack bar?
4. Can we go to the gift shop?
5. No , kids. We don't have time .
6. Aw! But I want to buy a gift for my dad.
7. And I'm thirsty .
8. Please, Miss Nadia. We'll hurry .
9. Sorry, kids. We have to catch the bus .

B Look, write and punctuate.

bookstore/ buy a book





Can we go to the bookstore?



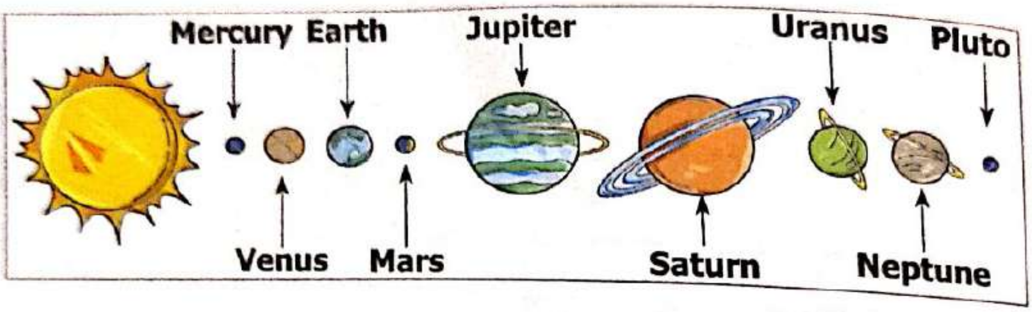
No, Kareem. We don't have time.



Aw. But I want to buy a book for my dad.

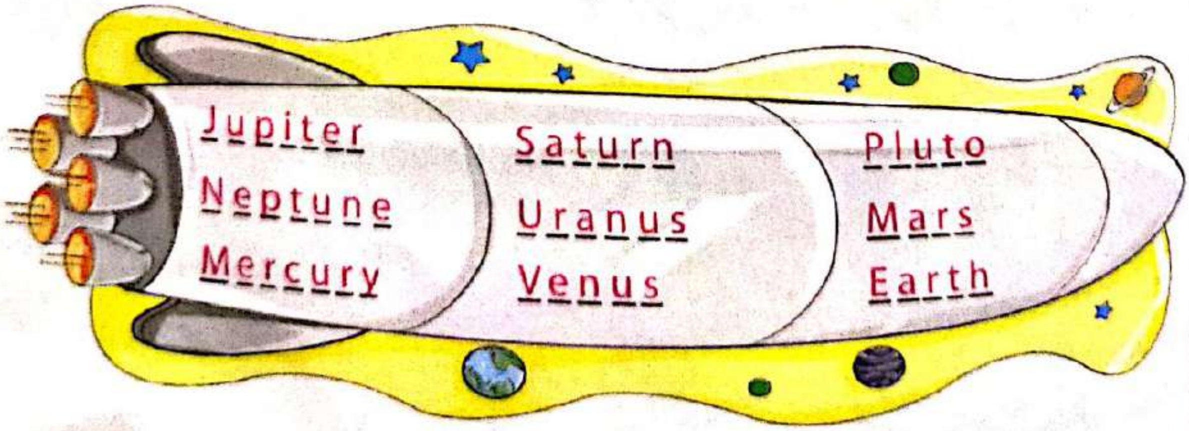
Workbook
Word Time

A **Which planet is it? Read and write.**



1. It's next to Mercury. It's smaller than Earth. It's Venus.
2. It's next to Saturn, but it isn't Jupiter. It's Uranus.
3. It's next to the smallest planet. It's smaller than Jupiter. It's Neptune.
4. It's the smallest planet. It's Pluto.
5. It's next to Venus. It's smaller than Venus. It's Mercury.
6. It's next to Mars. It's bigger than Venus. It's Jupiter.
7. It's our planet. We live here. It's Earth.
8. It's next to Jupiter, but it isn't next to Uranus. It's Mars.
9. It isn't next to Pluto, but it's next to Uranus. It's Saturn.

B **Write the names of the planets.**



Workbook
Practice Time

A Number the sentences.

1.


2.


3.


4.


2 She wants to see Pluto.
Let her look.

3 He wants to see Saturn.
Let him look.

4 I want to see Neptune.
Let me look.

1 They want to see Venus.
Let them look.

B Read and write.

1. she → her
2. I → me
3. we → us
4. they → them
5. he → him

C Fill in the gaps using words in the box.

him – me – them – us – her

1. I want to see Pluto. Let me look.
2. She wants to see Venus. Let her look.
3. He wants to see Mercury. Let him look.
4. They want to see Jupiter. Let them look.
5. We want to see Mars. Let us look.

Workbook
Phonics Time

A Does it have oi or oy? Write and match.

1. Roy is a boy . Joyce is a girl. .



2. Roy pointed at the oysters in the foil. .



3. Roy boiled some oy sters. .



4. Joy ce broiled some oy sters. .



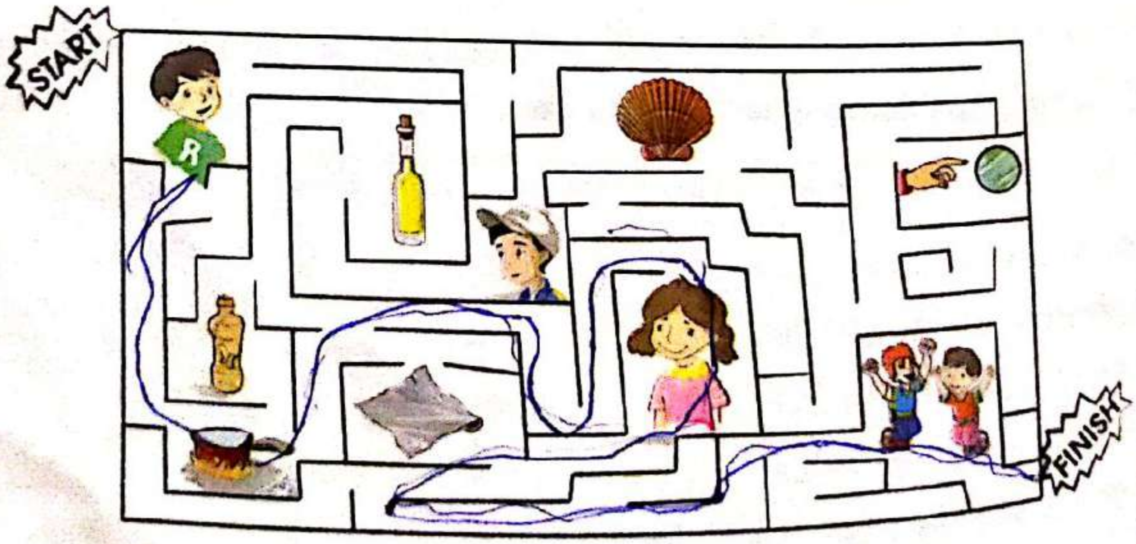
5. Joyce wanted soy sauce and Roy wanted oil. .



6. They ate the oy sters and jumped for joy .



B Follow the oy words.



Unit 11

Test 1

40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. point – boil b. oil – broil c. toy – joy

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

Ashraf : Excuse me. Can you help me?
Worker: Sure. (1)..................... do you want?
Ashraf : I want to see Jupiter. Let (2)..................... look.
Worker: What (3)..................... your sister want to see?
Ashraf : She wants to see Mars. Let (4)..................... look.
Worker: Okay.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

				Answers
1. Neptune	Venus	star	Pluto	....
2. joy	boil	point	join	....
3. father	son	mother	soy	....
4. moon	great	planet	star	....
5. broiled	cute	boiled	love	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

planet - sun - biggest - the - Venus

We had a lesson about the planets and stars last week. We knew that Jupiter is the (1)..biggest..planet. Pluto is (2)..planet.. smallest one. The Earth is the only (3)...sun... which has life. They all go around the (4)...Venus.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

There are nine planets in the solar system. Going out from the sun, they are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. We live on the Earth. Neptune is bigger than Pluto. Jupiter is the biggest. Pluto is the smallest. Mercury is the closest to the sun, and Pluto is the furthest from the sun.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mercury is the furthest planet from the sun.	(..........)	(....✓....)
2. Pluto is smaller than Jupiter.	(..........)	(....✓....)
3. Jupiter is the biggest planet.	(..........)	(....✓....)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How many planets are there in the solar system?

....

5. Which planet is the smallest?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. we – the – go – to – bookstore – Can?

....

2. you – the – planetarium – go – Did – to?

....

3. to - a gift - want – I – buy.

....

4. is – the – Mercury – the sun – to – closest.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. can we go to the snack bar/

....

2. Ahmed and mary can see saturn.

....

Unit 11 Test 2

Selected from School Exams

40



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

a. oyster - boy   b. oil - foil   c. coin - boil

إدارة شمال الجيزة 2018   إدارة بولاق الدكرور 2018   إدارة أبو النمرس 2018

2 Listen and complete:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 274

2019

Ali : Did you go to the planetarium?

Adel : Yes, I (1).. .

Ali : What did you (2).. there?

Adel : I (3).. all the planets.

Ali : (4).. planet is the smallest?

Adel : Pluto is the smallest.



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

5

					Answers	
1.	Mercury	Earth	camera	Venus	....	بولاق 2018
2.	her	me	she	them	....	2018
3.	cool	What	Which	Where	....	2019
4.	lunch	film	dinner	breakfast	....	2019
5.	spoil	point	broil	soy	....	2019

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. Kareem wants to see pluto. Let .... look.

إدارة أسوان 2019

a) him b) them c) her d) me

2. We live on ....

إدارة بني مزار 2019

a) Uranus b) Mercury c) Earth d) Neptune

3. Jupiter is the .... planet.

إدارة شمال الإسماعيلية 2018

a) smallest b) fastest c) slowest d) biggest

4. We want to see the moon. Let .... look.

إدارة أخميم 2019

a) him b) me c) us d) them

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

إدارة المنيا 2018

The students are in a field trip to the planetarium. They are looking at all the planets and stars. Ramy wants to go to the snack bar and Ali wants to go to the gift shop. Miss Amira says, "No". Ramy and Ali are unhappy. Ramy is hungry. Ali wants to buy a gift for his father. They can't because they are late and they have to catch the bus.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Ali wants to go to the snack bar.	(....................)	(....................)
2. Ramy and Ali are both happy.	(....................)	(....................)
3. Ramy and Ali have to catch the bus.	(....................)	(....................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where are the students?

....

5. Why can't the students buy gifts?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

6

1. have to - We - bus - the - catch. إدارة أسيوط 2017

....

2. the snack - we - go - Can - to - bar? إدارة الحوامدية 2018

....

3. have - dinner, - Let's - some - Hoda. إدارة ميت غمر 2017

....

4. planet - biggest - is - the - What? إدارة فرشوط 2019

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

6

إدارة كفر الزيات 2017



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following:

1

1. we live on the earth. 2018

....

2. Mona and Hany can see saturn/ 2017

....

Unit 12

At School
في المدرسة



Unit Objectives
أهداف الوحدة

onversation Time
- ive and receive compliments.
- إعطاء المجاملات وتلقيها.
- icit and express personal opinions.
- استنباط الآراء الشخصية والتعبير عنها.
- ake suggestions.
- عمل اقتراحات.
- entify speakers in a conversation.
- التعرف إلى المتحدثين في محادثة.

ord Time
- rite sentences.
- كتابة جمل.
- ead sentences.
- قراءة جمل.
- earn vocabulary: Occupations.
- تعلم المفردات اللغوية، المهن/ الوظائف.

Practice Time
- Ask about career choice.
- السؤال عن اختيار المهنة.
- Learn Wh-questions with "Why".
- تعلم السؤال باستخدام "Why" .
- Know adverbial clauses of reason with "Because".
- معرفة الجمل التي تعبر عن السبب باستخدام "لأن".
- Use affirmative statements with "like + gerund".
- استخدام "like + (inf.) + ing" بالجمل المثبتة.

Phonics Time
- Distinguish between sounds of vowel blends: "ar, al, au, aw, ar, or, ou, ow, oo, er, ir, ur, oi, oy".
- التميز بين أصوات الـ "ar, al, au, aw, ar, or, ou, ow, oo, er, ir, ur, oi, oy."
- Associate sound of letters with written form.
- الربط بين أصوات الحروف وطريقة كتابتها.

تشير لأسئلة المتميزين
تشير لأسئلة كتاب التدريبات
تشير لتسميع الكلمات

Conversation Time

Lesson 1

SB: p. (31)/WB: p. (21)

KEY adjectives (adj.)

Main Vocabulary — المفردات الرئيسية

school	مدرسة	well	جيداً / بشكل جيد	music	موسيقى
good (adj.)	جيد	singer	مغني/مغنية	but	لكن
enough	كافٍ / بشكل كافٍ	practice	تدريب / ممارسة	perfect (adj.)	ممتاز / متقن
idea	فكرة	together	معاً / سوياً		

Vocabulary — المفردات اللغوية

favourite (adj.)	مفضل	subject	مادة دراسية
art	مادة الرسم	easy (adj.)	سهل

Conjugation of verbs — تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs — أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يعزف / يلعب	played	love	يحب	loved
practise	يتدرب / يمارس	practised	look at	ينظر إلى	looked at

Irregular verbs — أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
sing	يغني	sang

Expressions and phrases — تعبيرات وعبارات

play music	يعزف موسيقى	Sure you do.	بالتأكيد تفعل ذلك
Practice makes you perfect.	التدريب يجعلك متقن	That's a great idea.	إنها فكرة عظيمة

Characters of the conversation

شخصيات المحادثة



Laila



Kareem

Story of the conversation

قصة المحادثة

- The students are at a music class. Kareem and Laila love playing music. Laila says she isn't a good singer, but Kareem thinks that she's a good one. Then, they decide to practise together.

- التلاميذ فى حصة الموسيقى. كريم وليلى يحبان عزف الموسيقى. ليلى تقول إنها ليست مغنية جيدة، ولكن كريم يعتقد أنها مغنية جيدة. ثم يقرران أن يتدربا سويا.

A Listen and repeat.

استمـع وردد.

1



You play very well.

أنت تعزفين بطريقة جيدة جدا.

Thanks. I love playing music.

شكرا. أنا أحب عزف الموسيقى.



2



I don't sing very well.

أنا لا أغنى بطريقة جيدة.

Sure you do. You're a good singer.

بالتأكيد أنت تغنين بطريقة جيدة. أنت مغنية جيدة.



3



But I don't practise enough.

لكن أنا لا أتدرب بالقدر الكاف.

Well, practice makes you perfect.

حسنا، التدريب يجعلك متقنة.



4



I have an idea. Let's practise together.

أنا لدى فكرة. هيا بنا نتدرب سويا.

That's a great idea.Thanks.

هذه فكرة عظيمة. شكرا.



B Listen and point to the speakers.

استمـع وأشر إلى المتحدثين.

C Role-play the conversation with a partner.

تبادل الأدوار للمحادثة مع زميل.

Language Functions

1. Giving and receiving compliments: إعطاء المجاملات وتلقيها:

e.g.

A : You play very well. انت تعزفين بطريقة جيدة جدًا.

B : Thanks. I love playing music. شكرًا. أنا أحب عزف الموسيقى.

Note

love + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ..... .

- I love playing music.

2. Suggestion: الاقـــتراح:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .... . هيا بنا .... .

e.g.

A : I have an idea. Let's practise together. أنا لدى فكرة. هيا بنا نتدرب سويًا.

B : That's a great idea. Thanks. إنها فكرة عظيمة. شكرًا.

3. Asking about favourite subject: السؤال عن المادة المفضلة:

e.g.

A : What's your favourite subject? ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟

B : I like art. أنا أحب مادة الرسم.

Check point

Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

إدارة شمال الجيزة 2018

Ali : You sing very well.

Kareem : Thanks.

Ali : Can you play (1)..?

Kareem : Yes, but I don't (2).. enough.

Ali : Me, too. Can we practise (3)..?

Kareem : Yes, we (4)..

D Review. Listen and repeat.

راجــع. استمع وردد.

What's your favourite subject?
ما هى مادتك المفضلة؟

I like art. Look at my kite.
أنا أحب مادة الرسم. أنظر إلى طائرتى الورقية.



That's great. Did you make it?
إنها رائعة. هل صنعتها بنفسك؟

Yes, I did. It was easy.
نعم. إنها سهلة.



- لاحظ ان حرفى (ch) فى (school) ينطقان /k/ /(ك).
- لاحظ ان حرف (c) فى (practise / perfect / subject) ينطق/k/(ك).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (gh) فى (enough) ينطقان /f/ /(ف).
- لاحظ ان حرفى (th) فى (together) ينطقان /ð/ /(ذ).
- لاحظ ان حرف (c) غالبا ما ينطق /s/(س) إذا اتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى/(practice).

Conversation Time
Exercise

1 Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

إدارة أبو النمرس 2019

Nada : What is your favourite subject?

Mona : I like art.

Nada : (1) .... can I go to the bathroom, please?

Mona : Go straight. It is (2) .... from the music room.

Nada : Is it next to the (3) .... ?

Mona : (4) ...., it is.

2 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

perfect - together - enough - friend - practise

Kady is in a primary school. She is in grade five. She likes playing music. She doesn't (1) .... enough. She is sad. Nada is helping her. Nada says to her "Let's practise (2) ....". Nada is a good (3) .... She says, "Practice makes you (4) .... ".

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

The students are at a music class. Menna loves playing music. Sarah says, "She isn't a good singer". But Menna thinks she's a good one. Sarah and Menna are sitting down and they are talking. Sarah is sad. Menna is smiling and helping her. They are going to practise singing together.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1.	The students are at a math class.	(..........)	(..........)
2.	Menna says, "She isn't a good singer."	(..........)	(..........)
3.	Sarah is happy.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Menna love? ....
5. What are Menna and Sarah going to do? ....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

إدارة الروضة 2017

1. your - is - What - subject - favourite?

....

إدارة المطرية 2018

2. play - I - violin - don't - the.

....

إدارة الساحل 2018

3. my - kite - at - Look - ,Amgad.

....

إدارة ميت غمر 2019

4. perfect - make - Does - practice - you?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة عابدين 2017



....

....

....

....

6 Punctuate the following:

إدارة الحوامدية 2019

1. let's practise together, aya. ....
2. did you see Noha s kite? ....

معلومة من يونيسف

أغسل يدى قبل تناول الطعام وبعده

Word Time

Lesson 2

SB. p. (24)/ WB: P. (22)

KEY adjectives: (adj.)

Main Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

	Occupations: المهن/ الوظائف	What does he/she do? ماذا يفعل هو / تفعل هى؟
	musician ملحن / موسيقار	plays the violin يعزف على الكمان
	engineer مهندسة	builds things تبنى أشـياء
	vet طبيب بيطرى	helps animals يساعد الحيوانات
	computer programmer مبرمجة حاسب آلى	programs computers تبرمج حواسب آليـة
	nurse ممرضـة	takes care of people تعتنى بالناس
	artist فنـــان	draws pictures يرسم صورا / لوحات

Other words كلمات أخرى

watch	ساعة يد	What colour ..?	ما لون ..؟
black (adj.)	أسود/ سوداء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
play	يلعب/يعزف	played	help	يساعد	helped
program	يبرمج	programmed	want	يريد	wanted
thank	يشكر	thanked	look for	يبحث عن	looked for

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
build	يبنى	built	take care of	يعتنى بـ	took care of
draw	يرسم	drew	let	يدع/ يسمح	let

معلومة من **يونيسف**

استخدم بنك الحروف والأشكال لتستطيع حل الشفرة التالية

حل اللغز

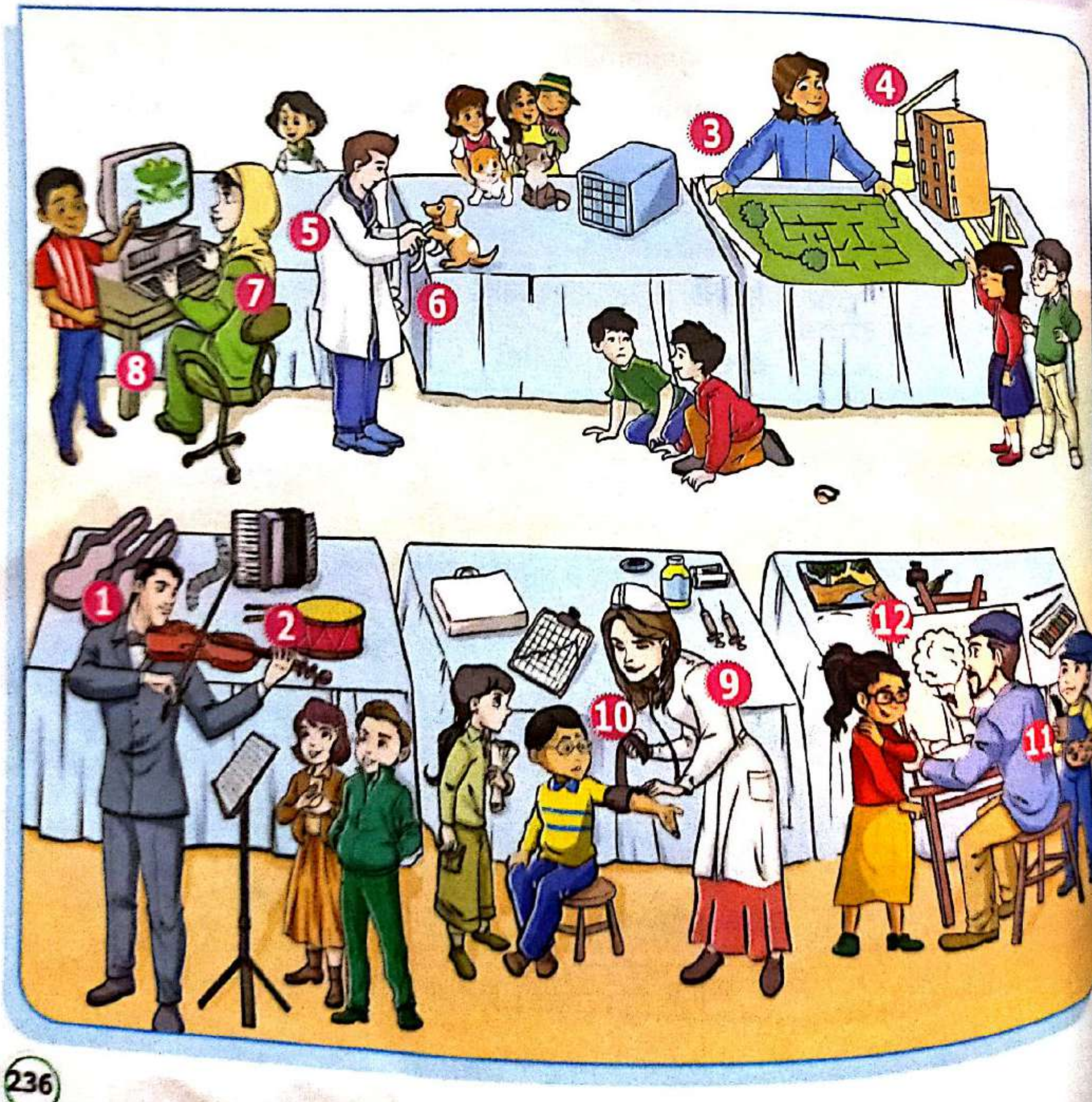
بنك الحروف



A Listen and repeat. استمـــع وردد.

1. musician
2. play the violin
3. engineer
4. build things
5. vet
6. help animals
7. computer programmer
8. program computers
9. nurse
10. take care of people
11. artist
12. draw

B Point and say the words. أشـــر إلى الكلمات وانطقها.



Check point

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers	
1.	singer	paper	artist	musician (WB)	....	
2.	build	vet	swim	draw	....	إدارة شرق الفيوم 2019
3.	colour	engineer	programmer	artist	....	إدارة نبروه 2019
4.	help	play	build	computer	....	إدارة جنوب بورسعيد 2017
5.	engineer	artist	violin	musician	....	إدارة أجا 2018

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر.

Now, listen and point to the speakers. الآن، استمـع وأشـر إلـى المتحدثيـن.



Girl 1 : I want to see the cats. Let me look.
- أريد أن أرى القطط. دعيني أنظر.

Girl 2 : Sure.
- بالتأكيد.

Girl 1 : Thank you. They're cute!
- شكرًا لك، إنهم جذابون!



Boy: What a cool picture. Did you make it?
- يا لها من صورة رائعة. هل صنعتها بنفسك؟

Computer programmer : Yes, I did.
- نعم.

Boy: Was it hard?
- هل كانت صعبة؟

Computer programmer: No, it wasn't. I'll show you.
- لا، لم تكن صعبة. سأوضح لك.



Boy 1 : What are you looking for?
- عم تبحث؟

Boy 2 : My watch! I can't find it.
- ساعتي! لا أستطيع أن أجدها.

Boy 1 : What colour is it?
- ما لونها؟

Boy 2 : It's black.
- إنها سوداء.

Language Functions

1. Requesting: الطلب:

. ... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + ضمير مفعول + Let

e.g.

. Let me look. دعنى انظر.

2. Asking about information: السؤال عن معلومة:

e.g.

A : What are you looking for? عم تبحث؟

B : My watch! I can't find it. ساعتى! لا استطيع أن أجدها.

3. Asking about and describing colours of the objects: السؤال عن الأشياء ووصف ألوانها:

What colour ......? مـا لـون......؟

e.g.

A : What colour is it? ما لونها؟

B : It's black. إنها سـوداء.

Check point

Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

vet - engineer - animals - program - musician

Nour wants to be an artist because she likes drawing. Noha wants to be an (1)...................... because she likes building things. Hadeer wants to be a computer programmer because she likes to (2)...................... computers. Doaa wants to be a (3)...................... because she likes to help (4)...................... .

D Write the words. (See pages 29 - 31).

اكتب الكلمات.

انظر إلى الصفحات (31 - 29) بالكتاب المدرسي:



A a



Bb



Cc



Dd



Ee



Hh



Mm



Nn



Pp



Tt



Vv



- لاحظ أن حرف (s) فى (musician) ينطق /z/(ز)، وحرفى (ci) ينطقان /ʃ/(ش).
- لاحظ أن حرف (g) فى (engineer) ينطق / dʒ/(دج).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (th) فى (things) ينطقان /θ/(ث).
- لاحظ أن حرف (c) فى (computer / take care / colour) ينطق / k / (ك).
- لاحظ أن حروف (tch) فى (watch) تنطق /tʃ/(تش).
- لاحظ أن حرفى (ck) فى (black) ينطقان /k/(ك).

Unit 12

Word Time Exercise

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	musician	engineer	vet	father (WB)	....
2.	play	build	nurse	help	....
3.	make	computer	desk	book	....
4.	cute	cool	hard	artist	....
5.	violin	draw	computer	picture	....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Practice makes you ....
   a) dinner b) enough c) shower d) perfect
2. The .... helps animals.
   a) nurse b) vet c) artist d) engineer
3. Magdy .... to be a computer programmer.
   a) don't want b) want c) wants d) to want
4. The engineer .... things.
   a) builds b) build c) are building d) building

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name is Ahmed. I am thirteen years old. This is Alaa and this is Hend. Alaa is twelve years old. Hend is eleven years old. Alaa likes building models. He wants to be an engineer. He likes playing the violin, but he doesn't like singing. Hend likes singing, but she doesn't like playing the violin. She wants to be an artist. She likes drawing.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Alaa likes singing.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Hend wants to be an artist.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Hend likes playing the violin.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Alaa want to be?

....

5. How old is Ahmed?

....

Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. the - musician - What - does - do? إدارة وسط القاهرة 2018

....

2. looking - What - you - are - for? إدارة أبنـوب 2017

....

3. wants - be - a - to - vet - He . إدارة الرحمانية 2019

....

4. models - likes - building - An - engineer. (WB)

....

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة طلخا 2017

(WB)



....

....

....

....

Practice Time

Lesson 3

SB: P (25)/ WB: P. (23)

A **Listen and repeat.** استمـع وردد.

Why	do you / does she	want to be a vet?

Because	I like / she likes	helping animals.

play → playing	build → building	help → helping
program → programming	take → taking	draw → drawing

STRUCTURE

Wh-questions with "Why ..?":

السؤال عن السبب باستخدام أداة الاستفهام "Why......?":

- للسؤال عن سبب اختيار وظيفة معينة: "لماذا تريد أن تكون ....؟":

Why	do	I/we/you/ they / اسم جمع	want to	(be)	(a/an) (occupation)? (الوظيفة)
	does	he/she/ it / اسم مفـرد			

- للإجابة نستخدم "Because" بمعنى "لأن" لذكر السبب:

Because	I/we/you/ they	like	(inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing......
	he/she/ it	likes	

e.g.

A : **Why** do you want to be a vet?

B : **Because** I like helping animals.





e.g.

A : **Why** does she want to be an engineer?

B: **Because** she likes building things.

Notes

• عند انتهاء بعض الأفعال بحرف "e" مسبوق بحرف ساكن يحذف حرف الـ "e" عند إضافة الـ "ing":

e.g. • take ⟶ taking.

• عند انتهاء بعض الأفعال بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك (a-e-i-o-u) يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ "ing":

e.g. • program ⟶ programming.

Check point

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

إدارة الإسماعيلية 2018

1. The nurse .... care of people.

a) take b) takes c) taking d) are taking

إدارة الدقي 2017

2. Why .... she want to be a vet?

a) do b) does c) doing d) done

3. She wants to be an artist because she likes .... pictures.

a) draws b) draw c) drawing d) drew

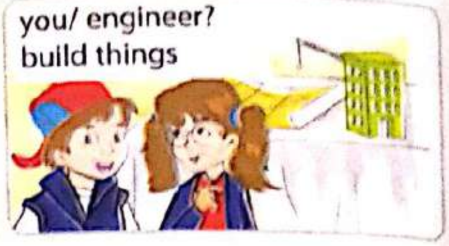
4. Why do you want to .... an engineer?

a) be b) is c) was d) are

B **Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.** استمع وردد، ثم تدرب مع زميل.

① **Why** do you want to be an engineer?

Because I like building things.



② **Why** does he want to be a computer programmer?

Because he likes programming computers.



③ **Why** does she .... a vet?

Because she .... animals.



④ **Why** does he want to be a nurse?
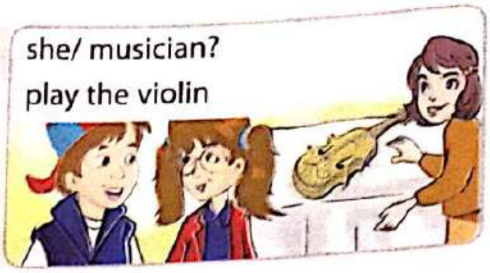
....



⑤ ....?

Because I like drawing.





6 .... ?
....

C Look at page 24. Point to the picture and practise with a partner.

انظر صفحة 24 بالكتاب المدرسى. أشر إلى الصورة وتدرب مع زميل كما فى المثال الآتى:

e.g.

S1 Why does she want to be a computer programmer?

S2 Because she likes programming computers.



Practice Time
Exercise

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... do you want to be an engineer?
   a) What b) Which c) Why d) Who
2. I want to be a vet because I like .... animals.
   a) reading b) helping c) programming d) building
3. Why .... Kareem want to be a musician?
   a) do b) is c) does d) can
4. Anas wants to be a doctor because he likes .... care of people.
   a) giving b) taking c) making d) talking

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

إدارة الفيوم 2018

Many people come to talk to the students about their jobs. Hany is a musician. He likes playing the violin. Sarah is a nurse. She likes taking care of sick people. Omar is an artist. He likes drawing pictures. Amira is a computer programmer. She loves working on computers. Samy is a vet. He likes helping animals.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Hany likes playing the violin.	(............)	(............)
2. Omar is a computer programmer.	(............)	(............)
3. Samy likes helping animals.	(............)	(............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does a nurse do? ....
5. Who loves working on computers? ....

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. programming - likes - He - computers.

....

2. animals - A - helping - likes - vet.

....

إدارة الصراحة 2019

3. be - want to - you - Why - an - engineer - do?

....

4. be - Why - to - does - want - a musician - she?

....

4 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

إدارة بولاق 2019

....

....

....

....



5 Punctuate the following:

1. What colour is it, nour/

....

2. let s practise together.

....

معلومة من يونيسف

أنظف أسنانى ولا أنسى تنظيف لسانى بالفرشاة أيضًا للتخلص من البكتيريا التى تسبب رائحة الفم السيئة

Phonics Time

Lesson 4

SB: P. (26) / WB: P. (24)

Main Vocabulary المفردات اللغوية

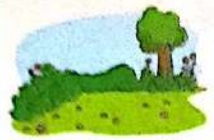
استمع إلى الكلمات الآتيـة ولاحظ الفرق بين نطق الأصوات المختلفة:

ar /ɑː/


dark مظلم


yard فناء / حديقة


yarn خيط غزل


park حديقة عامة

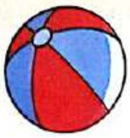

marker قلم سبورة

al /ɔː/


basketball كرة السلة


fall يسقط


tall طويل


ball كـرة


call يستدعى/يتصل بـ


walk يمشى

aw /ɔː/


yawn يتثاءب


saw منشـار


draw يرسم

au /ɔː/


saucer طبق (فنجان)

ou /aʊ/


cloud سحابة

or /ɔː/

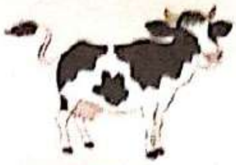

short قصير


fork شوكة

ow /aʊ/



shower دُش



cow بقرة

oo /u:/



spoon
ملعقة



food
طعام



noodles
مكرونة رفيعة (شعرية)



moon
قمر

oo /ʊ/



cook
طباخ



foot
قدم

er /ɜ:/



clerk موظف كتابى

ir /ɜ:/



shirt قميص



dirt قذارة

ur /ɜ:/



purse حافظة نقود للسيدات

oi /ɔɪ/



coin عملة معدنية

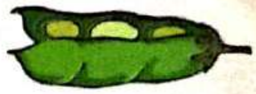


boil يغلى

oy /ɔɪ/



boy ولد



soy فول الصويا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
walk	يمشى	walked
cook	يطبخ	cooked

Present		Past
play	يلعب	played

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
have/has	يملك/يتناول	had	eat	يأكل	ate

Expressions and phrases

تعبيرات وعبارات

have a saucer	لديه طبق صغير	eat noodles	يأكل مكرونة رفيعة (شعرية)

Check point

Listen and circle:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

a. fork - short (إدارة أسيوط 2018)

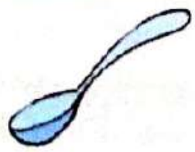
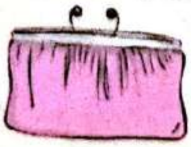
b. foot - cook (إدارة طهطا 2018)

c. cow - shower (إدارة طلخا 2019)

A Listen and repeat.

استمـع وردد.



 marker /ɑː/	 walk /ɔː/	 saucer /ɔː/	 draw /ɔː/
 park /ɑː/	 fork /ɔː/	 cloud /aʊ/	 shower /aʊ/
 cook /ʊ/	 spoon /uː/	 clerk /3ː/	 shirt /3ː/
 purse /3ː/	 coin /ɔɪ/	 boy /ɔɪ/	

B Listen and circle.

استمع وضع دائرة.

1. saw
2. yarn
3. food
4. call
5. short
6. fork

1. soy / saw
2. yawn / yarn
3. food / foot
4. cow / call
5. short / shirt
6. fork / fall

C Read the sentences. Write the numbers. Then listen.

اقرأ الجمل. اكتب الأرقام على الصور. ثم استمع.

1. Did you see the tall, thin clerk?
   She walked into a big blue shirt.
2. Paul has a saucer, a fork and a spoon.
   He eats noodles on the moon.
3. Look at the yellow and black basketball.
   Do you like to play in the yard with a ball?







Phonics Time
Exercise

1 Listen and circle.

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

a. nurse - purse   b. shirt - dirt   c. fork - corn

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	park	yard	school	cloud	....
2.	shirt	soy	skirt	purse	....
3.	walk	draw	cook	park	....
4.	coin	fork	spoon	saucer	....
5.	boil	yarn	draw	call	....

3 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

shirt - purse - park - clerk - dirt

Yesterday, Ahmed and his sister went shopping. Ahmed bought a (1) ....
His sister bought a (2) .... Ahmed paid the money to the (3) ....
Then, they went to the (4) .... They went back home in the evening.

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. has - and - a saucer - Paul - a fork.

....

2. like to - Do - in - you - the yard - play?

....

3. eats - on - He - moon - the - noodles.

....

4. she - the - clerk - Did - see - thin?

....

5 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

(WB)



....

....

....

....

Unit 12
Revision

Conversation Time

Kareem : You play very well.
- أنت تعزفين بطريقة جيدة جدا.

Laila : Thanks. I love playing music. I don't sing very well.
- شكرا. أنا أحب عزف الموسيقى. أنا لا أغنى بطريقة جيدة.

Kareem : Sure you do. You're a good singer.
- بالتأكيد أنت تغنين بطريقة جيدة. أنت مغنية جيدة.

Laila : But I don't practise enough.
- لكن أنا لا أتدرب بالقدر الكاف.

Kareem : Well, practice makes you perfect. I have an idea. Let's practise together.
- حسنا، التدريب يجعلك متقنة. أنا لدى فكرة. هيا بنا نتدرب سويا.

Laila : That's a great idea. Thanks.
- هذه فكرة عظيمة. شكرا.

Word Time

musician ملحن/ موسيقار	plays the violin يعزف على الكمان	engineer مهندس
builds things يبنى أشـياء	vet طبيب بيطرى	helps animals يساعد الحيوانات
computer programmer مبرمج حاسب الى	programs computers يبرمج حواسب آلية	nurse ممرض
takes care of people يعتنى بالناس	artist فنـــان	draw pictures يرسم صورا/ لوحات

Practice Time

Wh-questions with "Why ..?":

السؤال عن السبب باستخدام أداة الاستفهام "Why..?":

- للسؤال عن سبب اختيار مهنة/وظيفة معينة: "لماذا تريد أن تكون .....؟":

Why	do → I/we/you/ they / اسم جمع	want to +	(be)	+	(a/an) (occupation)? (الوظيفة)
	does → he/she/ it / اسم مفرد				

- للإجابة:

Because	I/we/you/ they →	like	(inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ....
	he/she/ it →	likes	

e.g. A: **Why** do you want to be an artist?
B: **Because** I like drawing.



e.g. A: **Why** does he want to be a musician?
B: **Because** he likes playing the violin.



Phonics Time

ar /a:/		al /ɔ:/		au /ɔ:/		aw /ɔ:/	
marker	قلم سبورة	walk	يمشى	saucer	طبق (فنجان)	draw	يرسم
park	حديقة عامة	call	يستدعى/ يتصل بـ			saw	منشار
yarn	خيط غزل	ball	كرة			yawn	يتثاءب
yard	فناء	tall	طويل				
dark	مظلم	fall	يسقط				
		basketball	كرة السلة				

or /ɔ:/		ou /aʊ/		ow /aʊ/		oo /u:/	
fork	شوكة	cloud	سحابة	shower	دش	spoon	ملعقة
short	قصير			cow	بقرة	food	طعام
						noodles	مكرونة رفيعة (شعرية)
						moon	قمر

oo /ʊ/		er /3:/		ir /3:/		ur /3:/	
cook	طباخ	clerk	موظف كتابى	shirt	قميص	purse	حافظة نقود للسيدات
foot	قدم			dirt	قذارة		

oi /ɔɪ/		oy /ɔɪ/	
coin	عملة معدنية	boy	ولد
boil	يغلى	soy	فول الصويا

Writing Time

Answered Examples

Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

هذه الجزئية تساعدك على إجابة السؤال السابع داخل الورقة الامتحانية.



a Laila and Kareem are at a music class. Laila doesn't sing well. Kareem will help her. They will practise together.



b My mother is an artist. She likes drawing. My father is an engineer. He likes building things.



(WB)

c The boy and the girl were at the shop. The girl bought a purse. The boy bought a shirt. They were very happy.

Check your Vocabulary

Give the meanings in English:

Conversation Time

مدرسة	....	التدريب يجعلك متقن	....
ممتاز/ متقن	....	فكرة	....
مغنى/مغنية	....	مادة الرسم	....
مادة دراسية	....	مفضل	....
تدريب/ممارسة	....	موسيقى	....

Word Time

ملحن/موسيقار	....	يعزف على الكمان	....
يعتنى بالناس	....	مبرمج حاسب آلى	....
يرسم صورًا/ لوحات	....	يبنى أشياء	....
فنان	....	مهندس	....
ممرض	....	يبرمج حواسب آلية	....
يساعد الحيوانات	....	طبيب بيطرى	....

Phonics Time

قلم سبورة	....	شوكة	....
يمشى	....	كرة سلة	....
طبق (فنجان)	....	سحابة	....
حافظة نقود للسيدات	....	يتثائب	....
طعام	....	ملعقة	....
طباخ	....	موظف كتابى	....

Workbook
Conversation Time

A **Fill in the blanks. Then number the sentences.**

together play practice have playing music singer idea That's enough well do



B **Look and write.**



You paint really well.

Thanks. I love painting.

I don't paint very well.

Sure you do. You're a good painter.

Workbook
Word Time

A Read and match.

1. musician
2. nurse
3. computer programmer
4. engineer
5. artist



B Read and write.



Today is Sunday. What are they going to do on Monday?

1.  She's a musician. She's going to play the violin.
2.  He's a vet. He's going to help animals.
3.  They're engineers. They're going to build models.
4.  He's a computer programmer. He's going to program computers.
5.  They're artists. They're going to draw.
6.  She's a nurse. She's going to take care of people.

Workbook

Practice Time

A **Read and write.**



1. Why does she want to be a vet?
   Because she likes helping animals.
2. Why does he want to be a computer programmer?
   Because he likes programming computers.
3. Why do they want to be nurses?
   Because they like taking care of people.
4. Why does he want to be an artist?
   Because he likes drawing.
5. Why does she want to be a musician?
   Because she likes playing the violin.
6. Why does she want to be an engineer?
   Because she likes building models.

B **Your turn. Read and write.**

Answers will vary.



Why do you want to be a computer programmer?

Because I like programming computers.

Workbook

Phonics Time

A Read and write. Use some letters twice.

ar au er or ow ou oi ur ir oo

1. 

P_au_l and Patty went shopping.
P_au_l bought a sh_ir_t. Patty bought
a p_ur_se. The cl_er_k was very happy!

2. 

Emad c_oo_ked lunch today. He b_oi_led some instant
n_oo_dles.
"Yum!" said Dalia. But there was a c_oi_n
in the n_oo_dles and a mark_er_ in the salad!

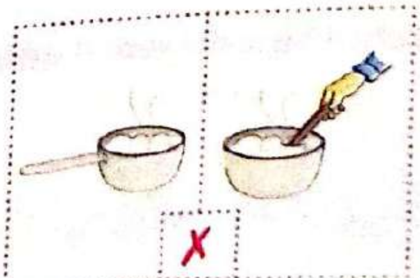
3. 

Samir went to the p_ar_k. He ate d_ir_t with
a f_or_k and got very d_ir_ty. He saw a d_ar_k
cl_ou_d and thought, "I can take a sh_ow_er in
the rain!"

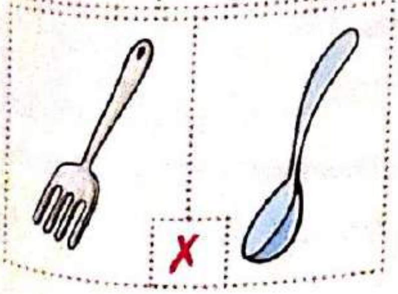
B Do they both have the same vowel sound? Look and put ✓ or ✗.

1. 

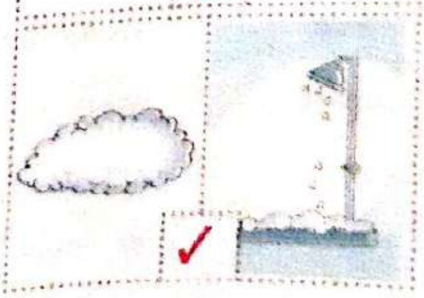
✓

2. 

✗

3. 

✗

4. 

✓

Unit 12
Test

40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

a. marker - park b. walk - call c. draw - saw

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

Alaa : Hello! Khaled.
Khaled : Hi, Alaa. (1)............................ do you want to be?
Alaa : I want to be an (2)............................ .
Khaled : (3)............................ ?
Alaa : Because I like (4)............................ things.
Khaled : OK. Goodbye.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	art	help	draw	build	....
2.	easy	musician	short	great	....
3.	want	take	subject	fall	....
4.	vet	artist	engineer	marker	....
5.	play	nurse	musician	clerk	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 4

vet - musician - plays - computer - engineer

We are a happy family. My father is a computer programmer. He works in a (1)............ shop. My mother is a (2)................ . She plays the guitar. My brother is a (3)............ . He takes care of animals. When I grow up, I want to be an (4)................ because I like building things.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

My name is Hala. I'm twelve years old. I live in Mansoura. My father is a teacher. He works in a big school. He teaches English. My mother is a nurse. She helps sick people. I have two sisters. They want to be engineers because they like building models. I like playing the violin. I want to be a musician.

(A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Hala has three sisters.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Her father is a teacher.	(..................)	(..................)
3. She is eleven years old.	(..................)	(..................)

(B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Hala want to be?

....

5. Why does her mother like to be a nurse?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6)

1. your - What's - subject - favourite?

....

2. build - to - He's - things - going.

....

3. you - together - to - Do - want - practise?

....

4. to - Mayar - be - wants - a - programmer - computer.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: (6)

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: (2)

1. kareem wants to be a musician/

....

2. do you want to be an artist/

....

Units 11 & 12 Test

Selected from School Exams

40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

a. point - join
إدارة ملوى 2018

b. foil - spoil
إدارة أشمون 2019

c. tall - fall
إدارة عابدين 2017

2 Listen and complete:

6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 275

إدارة بركة السبع 2018

Rodina: Where were the students?

Roqia : They were at the (1)............................ .

Rodina: What did they (2)............................ ?

Roqia : They saw all the planets and stars.

Rodina: Where (3)............................ they go after that?

Roqia : They went to the (4)............................ shop.

B. Reading

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

5

				Answers	
Venus	Neptune	Pluto	Tuesday	....	إدارة دير مواس 2018
planetarium	picture	aquarium	museum	....	إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2019
frown	jump	love	oil	....	إدارة شرق المنصورة 2018
vet	hospital	artist	engineer	....	إدارة شبين الكوم 2017
park	yard	museum	cook	....	إدارة ههيا 2019

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to see Jupiter. Let .... look.
   a) him b) me c) us d) them
2. I love .... music.
   a) plays b) playing c) played d) play
3. The .... takes care of people.
   a) vet b) engineer c) nurse d) artist
4. I want to buy a .... for my dad.
   a) gift b) nap c) purse d) music

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Yesterday we went to the planetarium. We went by bus. We saw the planets and stars. It was a great show. Kareem wanted to go to the snack bar because he was hungry. Ramy wanted to go to the gift shop to buy a gift for his dad. The kids were very happy. We will go there again on Friday.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Yesterday we went to the planetarium.	(..........)	(..........)
2. We saw the planets and trees.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Ramy was hungry.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did they go to the planetarium?

....

5. Why did Kareem go to the snack bar?

....

C. Writing

⑥ Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. sing - I - well - can't. إدارة طنطا 2017

....

2. to - nurses - They - be - want. إدارة أسيوط 2018

....

3. planets - you - all - Did - the - see? إدارة الوراق 2019

....

4. build - How - you - a model - do? إدارة الزرقا 2017

....

⑦ Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6

إدارة بسيون 2019



....

....

....

....

⑧ Punctuate the following: 2

1. ali and samy can see Venus. إدارة أشمون 2018

....

2. Do you like music, sameh/ إدارة عابدين 2017

....

Review 2

Sokkara's World

عالم سكرة



Objectives:

الأهداف:

Listening/Speaking:

- Participate in a conversation.
  - المشاركة في محادثة.
- Identify meaning of a conversation.
  - التعرف على معنى محادثة.

Reading/Writing:

- Recognise and produce words (vocabulary).
  - التعرف على الكلمات (المفردات اللغوية) واستخداماتها.

Story Time

SB: P. 27

A Listen and repeat.

استمــع وردد.



B Look at A. Listen and point. انظـــر إلى التمرين A . استمع وأشـــر.

C Listen. Circle True or False. استمع، وضع دائرة حول صح أو خطأ.

1. Sokkara made the cake. True False
2. Sokkara doesn't like baking. True False
3. Sokkar and Sokkara are going to bake together. True False
4. Sokkar doesn't like the cake. True False
5. Sokkara doesn't want to make ice cream. True False

D Role-play these scenes. تبادل الأدوار فى هذه المشاهد.

معلومة من
يونيسف

أحمى نفسى من الأنيميا

بتناول أطعمة مليئة بالحديد مثل:



Activity Time

SB: P. 28

A Listen and write.

استمع واكتب.

1. Point to the bird in the park.
2. Roy likes to cook curry.
3. Bert eats oysters with a fork.

1. 

2. 

3. 

B Read and match.

اقــرأ وصــل.

اقــرأ السؤال وصله بالإجابة المناسبة.

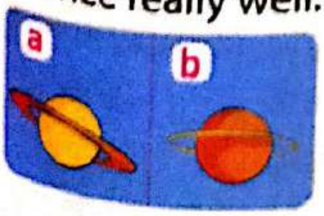
1. Why do you want to be an engineer?	Because I like helping animals.
2. Why do you want to be a vet?	Because I like playing the violin.
3. Why do you want to be a musician?	Because I like drawing.
4. Why do you want to be an artist?	Because I like building things.

C Listen and circle a or b.

استمـع وضع دائرة حول b أو a.

استمع إلى الجمل واختر الصورة المناسبة.

1. I want to see Jupiter. Let me look.
2. I like making videos, but I don't like reading comic books.
3. You dance really well. Thanks. I love dancing.

1. 

2. 

3. 

Tape scripts نصوص الاستماع

GEM

Unit 7

Conversation Time Check point

A : Which one do you want?
B : I don't know. They're all cute.
A : It's time to go. Can you make up your mind?
B : Um, okay. I'll take this one.
A : Are you sure?
B : Yes, I am.

Conversation Time Exercise

1. Father : Which one do you want?
Daughter : Oh, I don't know. They are all cute.
Father : Please, can you make up your mind?
Daughter : OK. I'll take this one.
Father : Good. Where is the cashier?
Daughter : He is over there.

Phonics Time Check point

a. farm b. corn c. yard

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. garden b. card c. horn

Unit 7 Test 1

1. a. fork b. popcorn c. smart
2. Mona : Hello, Rana.
Rana : Hello. What's your favourite sea animal?
Mona : The whale. It's very big.
Rana : Which one is bigger, the whale or the dolphin?
Mona : The whale is bigger than the dolphin.
Rana : Thank you.

Unit 7 Test 2

1. a. shark b. part c. story

2. Father : Which one do you want?
Mona : Oh, I don't know. They are all cute.
Father : Please can you make up your mind?
Mona : Sure.
Father : Where is the cashier?
Mona : He is over there.

Unit 8

Conversation Time Check point

Hoda : Where is the monkey?
Maha : It's on the car.
Hoda : Is it scary?
Maha : Don't worry. It won't hurt you.
Hoda : Is that a lion?
Maha : Yes, it is.

Conversation Time Exercise

Ali : Dad! Guess what!
Dad : What?
Ali : There's a monkey on the car.
Dad : Quick! Shut the window.
Ali : Is it scary?
Dad : No, it isn't. It is cute.

Phonics Time Check point

a. trout b. cloud c. town

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. out b. brown c. snow

Unit 8 Test

1. a. flower b. mouse c. owl
2. A : When did you go to the zoo?
B : I went there last Friday.
A : What did you see there?
B : I saw the lion and the cheetah.
A : Did you take pictures?
B : Yes, I did.

Units 7&8 Test

1. a. house b. fork c. down
2. **Noha:** Nour! Guess what!
   Nout: What?
   Noha: There's a monkey on the car.
   Nout: A monkey? Quick! Shut the window.
   Noha: It's cute.
   Nout: It's not cute. It's scary.

Unit 9

Conversation Time Check point

Nour: Oh! I missed the ball.
Hadeer: We won! We won!
Nour: Congratulations.
Hadeer: Was it close?
Nour: Yeah, it was. Do you want to play again?
Hadeer: Sure.

Conversation Time Exercise

1. **Ali:** We won! We won!
   Ahmed: Congratulations.
   Ali: Nice game. It was close.
   Ahmed: Do you want to play again?
   Ali: Sure. Are you ready?
   Ahmed: Yes, we are.

Phonics Time Check point

a. cook b. boot c. hook

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. moon b. took c. moose

Unit 9 Test 1

1. a. book b. wood c. foot
2. **Hala:** We won! We won!
   Mona: Congratulations.
   Hala: It was close. Do you want to play again?
   Mona: Sure. This time we'll win.
   Hala: We'll see. Are you sure?
   Mona: Yes, we are.

Unit 9 Test 2

1. a. foot b. rooster c. moon
2. **Adel:** Hello! Ali.
   Ali: Hello! Adel.
   Adel: What do you like to do?
   Ali: I like to play football.
   Adel: Do you play football with your brother?
   Ali: No, I don't. My brother likes to go sailing.

Halfway Exams

Exam 1

1. a. hard b. house c. wood
2. **Nour:** Where's the monkey?
   Hadeer: It's on the car.
   Nour: Is it scary?
   Hadeer: Don't worry. It won't hurt you.
   Nour: Can I shut the window?
   Hadeer: Sure.

Exam 2

1. a. clown b. cookie c. card
2. **Heba:** I'm thirsty.
   Alaa: Me, too. What are we going to have?
   Heba: I'm going to have some orange juice. What about you?
   Alaa: I don't know.
   Heba: Please make up your mind.
   Alaa: OK. I'll have orange juice, too.

Unit 10

Conversation Time Check point

Eman: Wow! What a nice kite!
Judy: Thanks. I made it by myself.
Eman: Was it hard?
Judy: No, it was easy. I'll show you.
Eman: Great! What do we need?
Judy: Paper and string. Let's get some.

Conversation Time Exercise

1. **Mazen** : Wow! What a nice kite!
   Nada : Thanks. I made it by myself.
   Mazen : Are you kidding?
   Nada : No, it's true. I made it.
   Mazen : Was it hard?
   Nada : No, it was easy. I'll show you.

Phonics Time Check point

a. dessert b. shirt c. hurry

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. dirt b. purse c. burn

Unit 10 Test 1

1. a. dirt b. thirsty c. clerk
2. **Kareem** : Wow! What a nice kite!
   Yasser : Thanks. I made it by myself.
   Kareem : Are you kidding?
   Yasser : No, it's true. I made it.
   Kareem : Was it hard?
   Yasser : No, it was easy. I'll show you.

Units 9&10 Test

1. a. moon b. nurse c. curry
2. **Kareem** : How are you?
   Samy : I'm fine, thanks.
   Kareem : What do you like doing?
   Samy : I like playing volleyball.
   Kareem : Do you play with your brother?
   Samy : No, I don't. He likes cycling.

Unit 11

Conversation Time Check point

Hoda : Did you see all the planets and stars?
Ali : Yeah! That was a great show.
Hoda : Can we go to the snack bar?
Miss Fatma : No, we don't have time.
Hoda : Can we go to the gift shop?
Miss Fatma : Sorry, Hoda. We have to catch the bus.

Conversation Time Exercise

1. **Nada** : Wow! It was a great show.
   Miss Noha : Yeah! Did you see all the planets and stars?
   Nada : Yes, I did. Can I go to the gift shop?
   Miss Noha : Sorry, we don't have time.
   Nada : But I want to buy a gift for my dad, Miss Noha.
   Miss Noha : We have to catch the bus.

Phonics Time Check point

a. oil b. spoil c. joy

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. oyster b. join c. boy

Unit 11 Test 1

1. a. boil b. broil c. toy
2. **Ashraf** : Excuse me. Can you help me?
   Worker : Sure. What do you want?
   Ashraf : I want to see Jupiter. Let me look.
   Worker : What does your sister want to see?
   Ashraf : She wants to see Mars. Let her look.
   Worker : Okay.

Unit 11 Test 2

1. a. boy b. foil c. coin
2. **Ali** : Did you go to the planetarium?
   Adel : Yes, I did.
   Ali : What did you see there?
   Adel : I saw all the planets.
   Ali : Which planet is the smallest?
   Adel : Pluto is the smallest.

Unit 12

Conversation Time Check point

Ali : You sing very well.
Kareem : Thanks.
Ali : Can you play music?
Kareem : Yes, but I don't practise enough.
Ali : Me, too. Can we practise together?
Kareem : Yes, we can.

Conversation Time Exercise

1. **Nada** : What is your favourite subject?
Mona : I like art.
Nada : How can I go to the bathroom, please?
Mona : Go straight. It is across from the music room.
Nada : Is it next to the library?
Mona : Yes, it is.

Phonics Time Check point

a. fork b. foot c. shower

Phonics Time Exercise

1. a. purse b. shirt c. corn

Unit 12 Test

1. a. marker b. call c. saw
2. **Alaa** : Hello! Khaled.
Khaled: Hi, Alaa. What do you want to be?
Alaa : I want to be an engineer.
Khaled: Why?
Alaa : Because I like building things.
Khaled: OK. Goodbye.

Units (11&12) Test

1. a. point b. foil c. tall
2. **Rodina**: Where were the students?
Roqia : They were at the planetarium.
Rodina: What did they see?
Roqia : They saw all the planets and stars.
Rodina: Where did they go after that?
Roqia : They went to the gift shop.

Workbook Questions

أسئلة كتاب التدريبات المطابقة لمواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... do you like to do?

   a) Where b) When c) What d) Whose

2. I .... horseback riding.

   a) likes b) like c) sing d) sings

3. She likes playing ....

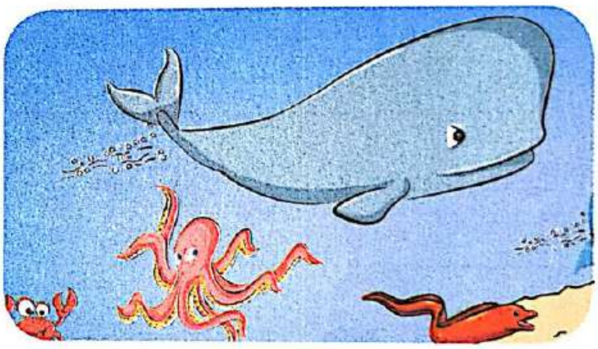
   a) ping-pong b) sailing c) fishing d) snorkelling

4. The dog stood on one ....

   a) nose b) face c) ear d) foot

② Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

1)



....

....

....

....

2)



....

....

....

....

3)

....

....

....

....



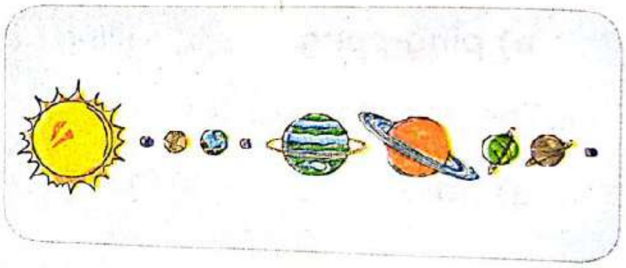
4)

....

....

....

....



5)

....

....

....

....



General Exercises

تدريبات عامة على المنهج مطابقة لمواصفات الورقة الإمتحانية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

A a. moose – kangaroo b. hurry – curry c. clown – brown

B a. skirt – shirt b. oil – foil c. park – yarn

C a. town – gown b. sailing – fishing c. join – spoil

D a. bird - girl b. boy - Roy c. spoon - moon

2 Listen and complete:

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

A

Ali : Dad! Guess what!
Father : (1)..................................?
Ali : There's a monkey on the car.
Father : Don't worry. It won't (2).................................. you.
Ali : Can I (3).................................. a picture?
Father : OK, but (4).................................. careful.

B

Menna : What do you like to do?
Haneen : I like to go sailing. What (1).................................. you?
Menna : I like to in-line (2).................................. .
Haneen : Is it (3)..................................?
Menna : No, it's (4).................................. .
Haneen : I want to go with you.

C

Laila : I don't sing very well.

Sarah : Sure you do. You are a good (1)................................... .

Laila : Can we (2)................................... together?

Sarah : OK, (3)................................... practise on Sunday.

Laila : Can we do it on (4)...................................?

Sarah : OK.

D

Rania : Hi, Dalia. Where did you go yesterday?

Dalia : I (1)................................... to Alexandria.

Rania : (2)................................... did you do there?

Dalia : I visited Alexandria Library.

Rania : (3)................................... did you go back home?

Dalia : At (4)................................... p.m.



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

A

					Answers
1.	book	maths	English	art	....
2.	planet	boil	broil	join	....
3.	nurse	hurry	vet	clerk	....
4.	What	Why	is	Who	....
5.	bus	cow	taxi	plane	....

B

					Answers
1.	food	skate	snack	dessert	....
2.	string	paper	draw	tape	....
3.	build	make	read	nap	....
4.	brown	white	pen	black	....
5.	park	got	took	threw	....

C

					Answers
1.	boat	moon	star	planet	....
2.	build	take	ride	model	....
3.	nice	down	great	scary	....
4.	mouse	cheetah	cloud	moose	....
5.	juice	corn	apple	orange	....

D

					Answers
1.	gift	dad	mum	brother	....
2.	singing	painting	vet	reading	....
3.	slow	crab	eel	octopus	....
4.	Saturn	Pluto	sea	Venus	....
5.	spoon	fork	coin	saucer	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box:

A

model – nap – making – look – book

I was at my friend's home yesterday. His father was taking a (1)............ . His mother was reading a (2)...................... . His sister was building a (3)............... . His brother was (4)...................... a video. It was a nice day.

B

animals - aquarium - octopus - monkey - whale

Last Friday was a holiday. I went to the (1)........................ with my family. We saw a lot of sea (2)........................ . The (3)........................ is big. The (4)........................ has many arms. The dolphin is faster than the crab. We had a nice time.

Or **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

A

1. The bathroom is .... the left.
   a) by b) on c) of d) for
2. A/An .... helps sick people.
   a) vet b) nurse c) artist d) musician
3. She goes .... on Friday.
   a) sailing b) sail c) sailed d) sails
4. Wow! What a .... kite!
   a) cold b) nice c) hungry d) thirsty

B

1. The eel is .... than the dolphin.
   a) smallest b) small c) smaller d) the smallest
2. The poodle stood on one ....
   a) ear b) eye c) nose d) foot
3. Which one .... you want?
   a) are b) were c) do d) is
4. We eat with a ....
   a) spoon b) saucer c) coin d) marker

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

A

Heba usually gets up at half past six. She brushes her teeth. She has breakfast with her family. She walks to school at 7.30. Her school is near her house. She comes to school on time. Her favourite hobby is reading. She reads books about fish. She likes the dolphin. The dolphin is faster than the octopus.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Heba has breakfast with her family.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Heba goes to school by bus.	(..................)	(..................)
3. The dolphin is faster than the octopus.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What time does Heba get up?

....

5. What's Heba's favourite hobby?

....

B

Every summer holiday, I go to a summer camp with my friends. At the summer camp, we can do a lot of activities. I like collecting stickers, but I don't like painting. My friend Ali likes cycling, but he doesn't like singing. My friend Sama likes reading comic books, but she doesn't like building models. We spend a nice time there.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. I don't like cycling.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Ali doesn't like building models.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Sama likes reading comic books.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where can you do a lot of activities?

....

5. Who likes cycling?

....

C

My name is Sally. Yesterday, I watched TV with my family. We watched a programme about animals. That was a great show. At 6:00 P.M., I wanted to do my homework, but I didn't find my English book. I was so sad. My sister helped me find the book. It was under the table.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Sally couldn't find the Arabic book.	(................)	(................)
2. Sally was so sad.	(................)	(................)
3. Her mother helped her find the book.	(................)	(................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Sally watch?

....

5. When did she want to do her homework?

....

D

There are nine planets in the solar system. They are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune and Pluto. We live on the Earth. Neptune is bigger than Pluto. Jupiter is the biggest planet. Pluto is the smallest one. Mercury is the nearest planet to the sun and Pluto is the furthest from the sun.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. There are four planets in the solar system.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Mercury is the nearest planet to the sun.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Neptune is the smallest planet.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where do we live?

....

5. Which planet is the furthest from the sun?

....



C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

A

1. made – myself – I – the kite – by. ....
2. one – tallest – is – Which – the? ....
3. over – The – there – is – cashier. ....
4. again – play – Do – to – want – you? ....

B

1. don't – have – We – time. ....
2. is – Pluto – bigger– Jupiter – than. ....
3. one – Which – want – do – you? ....
4. to – be – Why – you – a programmer – do – want? ....

C

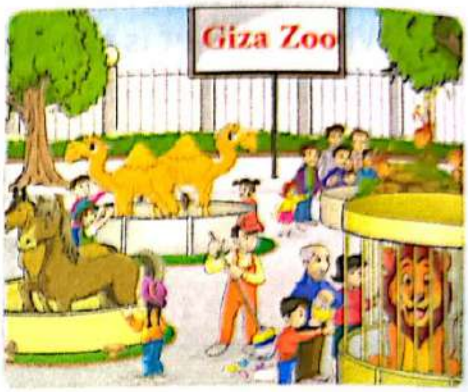
1. great – That's – a – idea. ....
2. a gown – mouse – the – Did – wear? ....
3. Salem – corn – put – the – did – Where ? ....
4. together – make – Let's – kite – a. ....

D

1. do - to – What – you - do - like? ....
2. play - likes - to - football – Ahmed. ....
3. animal - biggest – Which – the - is? ....
4. is - the – Mecury – the sun - to - closest. ....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

A



....
....
....
....

B



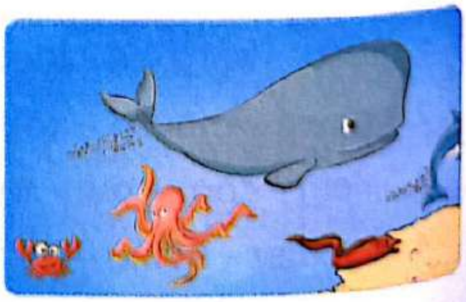
....
....
....
....

C



....
....
....
....

D



....
....
....
....

8 Punctuate the following:

A

1. I saw a tiger at giza zoo.

....

2. did Soha and Noha see the chimpanzee/

....

B

1. Why isn t samy playing?

....

2. Yes they saw the eagle on TV/

....

C

1. where s Nabil today?

....

2. it won t hurt you.

....

D

1. do you want to eat, Ali/

....

2. it is manar's car.

....

Graded Exams اختبارات متدرجة الصعوبة

Exam (1) "Easy to Medium"

40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

a. hurt – hurry   b. house – mouth   c. joy – soy

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

Rabab : Did you go to the zoo?

Heba : (1)........................, I did.

Rabab : (2)........................ one is faster, the cheetah or the chimpanzee?

Heba : The cheetah is faster (3)........................ the chimpanzee.

Rabab : Which (4)........................ is the tallest?

Heba : The giraffe is the tallest animal.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	singer	paper	artist	musician	....
2.	shark	eel	octopus	left	....
3.	models	Mercury	Earth	Venus	....
4.	smallest	short	biggest	tallest	....
5.	clerk	school	planetarium	zoo	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'll .... this one.
   a) takes   b) taking   c) take   d) took
2. The .... takes care of people.
   a) vet   b) engineer   c) nurse   d) artist
3. The crab is .... than the whale.
   a) taller   b) bigger   c) faster   d) slower
4. I want to go fishing. Let .... go.
   a) her   b) him   c) us   d) me

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Kareem went to the summer camp with his friends last Sunday. They played and laughed. Kareem painted some pictures. Amal cooked food with curry. Khaled made a video. Rania and Tamer collected stickers. Manar read a comic book. Hany built a model. In the afternoon, their teacher Mr. Kamal told them some funny stories.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Kareem went with his friends to the zoo.	(....................)	(....................)
2. Rania made a video.	(....................)	(....................)
3. Mr. Kamal told them some funny stories.	(....................)	(....................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did Kareem go to the summer camp?

....

5. What did Manar do?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. the fastest – cheetah – animal – Is?

....

2. Safari – visited – Park – the – We.

....

3. likes – things – My – building – brother.

....

4. planets – you – all – Did – the – see?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. What s Ahmed doing now/

....

2. anas can see venus.

....

Exam (2) "Medium to Hard" 40

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

a. moose – boot   b. barn – farm   c. mouse – house

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

Ali : What's your father's job?

Hani : He's a (1)..........................

Ali : (2).......................... you want to be a clerk like him?

Hani : No, I want to be an engineer.

Ali : Why do you (3).......................... to be an engineer?

Hani : Because I like (4).......................... things.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	dance	coin	call	fall	....
2.	won	met	miss	saw	....
3.	singing	fishing	sailing	skating	....
4.	elephant	chimpanzee	shark	cheetah	....
5.	musician	nurse	fork	vet	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 4

cashier - cute - buy - shoes - climb

Yesterday, Amira went to a clothes shop. She wanted to (1)................... some clothes. All the clothes were (2)................... . She bought a beautiful dress and black (3)................... . Her mother gave the money to the (4)................... . Amira was happy. She thanked her mother.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

At seven o'clock yesterday, Hassan's mother took him to school by car. Then, she went to the supermarket. She bought chickens, eggs and bread. She went back home at ten o'clock. She made lunch for the family at home. When the family came back at two o'clock, they had lunch together and they were very happy.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Hassan's mother went to the supermarket.	(...................)	(...................)
2. Hassan's mother bought four things.	(...................)	(...................)
3. The family came back in the evening.	(...................)	(...................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did Hassan go to school?

....

5. What did Hassan's mother buy?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 6

1. rooster – saw – red – a – They.

....

2. on – school – He – to – went – a scooter.

....

3. you – Did – see – the planets – stars – and?

....

4. does – want – Why – a musician – he – to be?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 6



....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. Omar isn t an engineer/

....

2. Did you see heba s book?

....

Workbook Sample Tests Test (1)

Modified

معدل طبقا لآخر تعديل وزاري

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

a. barn – farm b. wood – moon c. point – boy

2 Listen and complete: 6

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 114

Father : Which one do you want?
Daughter : Oh! I don't know. They are all (1)................ .
Father : Please, can you (2)................ up your mind?
Daughter : Sure.
Father : Where is the (3)................?
Daughter : He is (4)................ there.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	kite	lemonade	oil	water	....
2.	musician	father	engineer	vet	....
3.	build	draw	programmer	boil	....
4.	tigers	trees	animals	cats	....
5.	ice cream	cake	water	curry	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 4

doctor – thirsty – vet – painter – hungry

In the future, I'd like to be a painter. A (1)................. can draw and paint nice pictures. My brother wants to be a (2)...................... . He is kind to animals. He offers them food and drink when they are (3)...................... or (4)...................... .
My sister would like to be a computer programmer.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Mr. Magdy, his wife and the kids were at the Safari Park. Kareem saw the giraffe. It is very tall. Hoda loved the elephant and gave it potatoes. They all laughed at the monkeys. The monkeys ate bananas. The animals were happy. The kids were kind to the small animals.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

		True	False
1.	Mr. Magdy was at the zoo.	(..................)	(..................)
2.	Kareem saw the elephant.	(..................)	(..................)
3.	The giraffe is very tall.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Hoda love?

....

5. What did the monkeys eat?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. turtles – had – He – day – one.

....

2. She - snorkel – to – likes.

....

3. one - Which – tallest – is – the?

....

4. you – What – do – like?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: 5

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. Ahmed and mary can see saturn.

....

2. Did you see Heba s book/

....

Test (2)

Modified

معدل طبقا لاخر تعديل وزاري

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: (6)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 115

a. chair – share b. house – town c. school – took

2 Listen and complete: (6)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 115

Alaa : Do you want to visit the museum?

Khaled : That's a great (1)................. . I enjoy it.

Alaa : When do you like to (2).................?

Khaled : Next (3)................. .

Alaa : Are you (4)................. on that day?

Khaled : Yes, sure.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5)

					Answers
1.	owl	elephant	kangaroo	giraffe	....
2.	clown	clerk	sister	vet	....
3.	whale	turtle	eel	crab	....
4.	monkey	shop	cashier	gift	....
5.	aquarium	seashore	planetarium	gown	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in box: 4

hobby – plant – clean – models – cycling

Kareem, Hany and Ahmed are at school. They talk about their favourite hobbies. Kareem likes to (1)................ trees and flowers. Hany likes building (2).................... Ahmed's (3)...................... is different. He likes to keep his class, home and garden (4)...................... and tidy.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Mona and Hana are on a field trip to the aquarium. There are lots of different kinds of marine animals. Here's a whale, over there is a dolphin and there's a shark near the eel. This fish is fast, but this one is slow. This is an octopus and this is a crab. The crab is smaller than the octopus.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mona and Hana saw the lion.	(..................)	(..................)
2. The shark is near the eel.	(..................)	(..................)
3. They saw many sea animals.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Mona and Hana go?

....

5. Why did they go there?

....

C. Writing

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** 6

1. singing – doesn't – like – She.

....

2. models – builds – An engineer.

....

3. she – Does – drawing – like?

....

4. the – musician – What – did – do?

....

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:** 6



....

....

....

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** 2

1. this is alaa and Eman.

....

2. Where is hoda's violin/

....

Test (3)

Modified

معدل طبقا لاخر تعديل وزاري

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: (6)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 115

a. cook – spoon b. cow – call c. bird – bread

2 Listen and complete: (6)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 115

Soha : Where is the monkey?

Heba : It's on the (1)................... .

Soha : Is it (2)...................?

Heba : Don't worry. It won't (3)................... you.

Soha : Is that a (4)...................?

Heba : Yes, it is.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5)

					Answers
1.	Mercury	Earth	school	Venus	....
2.	fishing	sleeping	snorkelling	playing	....
3.	singer	paper	violin	musician	....
4.	football	hockey	basketball	wood	....
5.	elephant	giraffe	chimpanzee	whale	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4

1. The .... takes care of people.

   a) vet b) engineer c) nurse d) artist

2. We need string and .... to make a kite.

   a) paper b) violin c) moon d) house

3. The crab is .... than the whale.

   a) slower b) faster c) bigger d) taller

4. I want to see the moon. Let .... look.

   a) him b) me c) us d) them

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

Last week, we went to the seashore. Mr. Mohamed enjoyed snorkelling. Ahmed and Sara caught a big fish. Mona and Mary played volleyball. Kareem went horseback riding. Habiba was happy. She helped us by preparing sandwiches.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mr. Mohamed enjoyed the horseback riding.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Sara caught a big fish alone.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Mary and Mona played volleyball.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Kareem do?

....

5. How did Habiba help?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (6)

1. is – That – kite – a cool.

....

2. play - very - well – You.

....

3. he - Why – this - want - does?

....

4. they – have – Did – lunch?

....

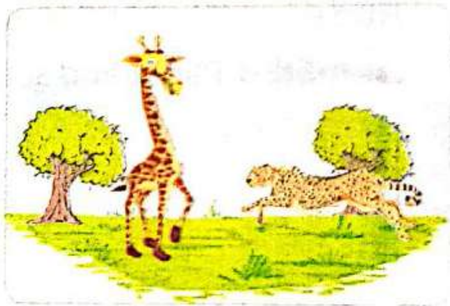
7 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences: (6)

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: (2)

1. We study english on thursday.

....

2. where is Kareem s school?

....

30 | أ- محافظة القاهرة - منطقة حدائق القبة التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. spoon - moon b. draw - saw c. boy - toy

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Huda : Wow! What a nice kite!

Ahmed : Thanks. I made it by (1)............................ .

Huda : Was it (2)............................?

Ahmed : No, it was (3)............................ . I'll show you.

Huda : Great! What do we need?

Ahmed : Paper and some (4)............................ .

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	Where	Whose	were	Why	....
2.	vet	policeman	sing	doctor	....
3.	he	drink	she	they	....
4.	saucer	spoon	purse	fork	....
5.	went	collect	swim	meet	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. .... like making videos.
   a) We   b) He   c) She   d) It
2. Nora wants to see Mars. Let .... look.
   a) them   b) he   c) him   d) her
3. It's eight o'clock. We have to .... the bus.
   a) hurry   b) catch   c) make   d) give
4. Shut the ...., please.
   a) fork   b) monkey   c) picture   d) window

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

I visited the park with my friends yesterday. I saw many people there. There was a man taking a nap because he was tired. Samir was reading a comic book.Mona was building models and her sister was collecting stickers. Soha was painting a picture of a tree. We were happy.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. There were many people in the park.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Samir was riding a bike.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Soha was painting a picture.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why was the man taking a nap?

....

5. Who was building models?

....

C. Writing

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** 4

1. eating - She - likes - fish.

....

2. fastest - is - one - Which - the?

....

3. is - gown - She - wearing - a.

....

4. want - do - you - Why - an engineer - to - be?

....

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences:** 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 **Punctuate the following:** 2

1. Yes it's true/

....

2. does Sama like arabic?

....

30 ٢ - محافظة الجيزة - إدارة ٦ أكتوبر التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. cook - food   b. take - make   c. farm - barn

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Eman : Did you go to the Safari Park?

Reham : Yes, I (1).. .

Eman : (2).. did you see there?

Reham : I (3).. a cheetah, giraffe and turtle.

Eman : (4).. one is the fastest?

Reham : The cheetah is the fastest.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	great	dad	cute	scary	....
2.	clerk	nurse	farmer	dessert	....
3.	coin	yarn	boil	toy	....
4.	shorter	tallest	biggest	smallest	....
5.	whale	shark	car	octopus	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. The .... is very big.
   a) whale b) crab c) eel d) turtle
2. My sister is wearing a new ....
   a) clown b) town c) brown d) gown
3. There .... a monkey on the car.
   a) be b) is c) are d) were
4. We like to .... volleyball.
   a) played b) plays c) play d) playing

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

There are lots of animals all around. Here are some chimpanzees and here is a turtle. The turtle is smaller than the chimpanzee. Over there, a long snake is on the tree. This tall giraffe is eating some leaves and this fat elephant is going to get a drink. The cheetah is standing on the grass.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. The fat elephant is going to get a drink.	(..............)	(..............)
2. The chimpanzee is bigger than the turtle.	(..............)	(..............)
3. The cheetah is standing on the grass.	(..............)	(..............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where is the long snake?

....

5. What is the giraffe eating?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: (4)

1. it - did - you - buy - When?

....

2. monkey - the - is - animal - My - favourite.

....

3. up - mind - your - Please - make.

....

4. the - shark - Is - than - smaller - the - whale?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: (5)



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: (2)

1. where is your new bike/

....

2. they like their school very much/

....

30 ٣- محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة العجمى التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. car - card   b. corn - horn   c. hook - look

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Salim : Which one do you want?

Salma : I don't know. They are all (1)................................ .

Salim : Please, can you (2)................................ up your mind?

Salma : Sure.

Salim : Where is the (3)................................?

Salma : He is (4)................................ there.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	elephant	owl	kangaroo	giraffe	....
2.	build	draw	boil	chair	....
3.	Mars	Mercury	Monday	Saturn	....
4.	football	ping-pong	wood	basketball	....
5.	kangaroo	poodle	scooter	moose	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 2

bought - father - gift - books - park

Hany went to the bookshop. There were a lot of (1)........................ . He bought a book for his (2)......................., then he went to the (3)...................... shop. He (4)........................... a present for his sister. He was very happy.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

I'm Adel. My father is an engineer. My mother is a doctor. I want to be a computer programmer because I like programming computers. My brother wants to be a vet because he likes helping animals. My sister wants to be a teacher because she likes helping students.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. His father is an engineer.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Adel is a doctor.	(..................)	(..................)
3. His brother likes helping animals.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who wants to be a vet?

....

5. Why does Adel's sister want to be a teacher?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. is - That - kite - a - cool.

....

2. play - really - well - You.

....

3. What's - favourite - subject - your?

....

4. he - Why - an artist - want - does - to be?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. We study english on thursday.

....

2. Where is nada's school/

....

30

٤- محافظة القليوبية - إدارة قها التعليمية



A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: (3)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. grown - town   b. bird - shirt   c. ball - call

2 Listen and complete: (4)

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Soha : What do you like to do?

Hoda: I like to (1)........................ ping-pong.

Soha : (2)........................ you like to play now?

Hoda: No, I don't. I'm (3)........................ now.

Soha : (4)........................ do you want to play?

Hoda: On Friday.



B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (5)

					Answers
1.	uncle	aunt	room	father	....
2.	What	close	Where	Who	....
3.	tiger	table	monkey	giraffe	....
4.	go	sing	play	sure	....
5.	cute	scary	shut	careful	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. The giraffe is the .... animal.
   a) shortest b) tallest c) taller d) tall
2. The .... takes care of people.
   a) vet b) engineer c) nurse d) artist
3. What do they like to .... ?
   a) do b) did c) doing d) does
4. The monkey is not scary. It's ....
   a) dark b) cute c) cold d) hot

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

My name is Sally. Yesterday, I watched TV with my family. We watched a programme about animals. That was a great show. At 6:00 P.M., I wanted to do my homework, but I didn't find my English book. I was so sad. My sister helped me find the book. It was under the table.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Sally couldn't find the Arabic book.	(..................)	(..................)
2. Sally was so sad.	(..................)	(..................)
3. Her mother helped her find the book.	(..................)	(..................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Sally watch?

....

5. When did she want to do her homework?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. Samy - Where - going - is - now?

....

2. father - to - goes - day - My - work - every.

....

3. There - Was - a - yesterday - storm?

....

4. there - Was - a - yesterday - storm?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5

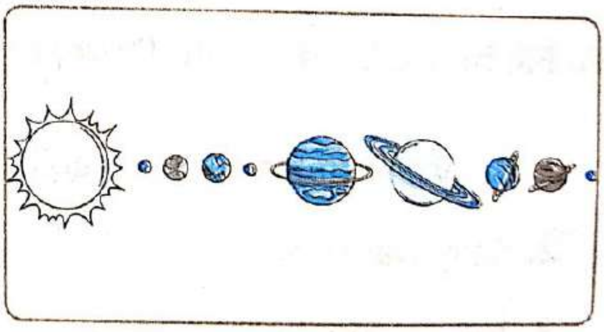
....

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. Ali visits his friend samy every Friday/

....

2. what is your father's job/

....

30 ٥ - محافظة المنوفية - إدارة بركة السبع التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. cloud - cow b. point - shirt c. saw - draw

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Rana : You play very well.

Aya : Thanks. I (1)............................ playing music.

Rana : What (2)............................ you want to be?

Aya : I (3)............................ to be a musician.

Rana : (4)............................ do you want to be a musician?

Aya : Because I like playing the violin.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	monkey	smart	slow	hard	....
2.	let	want	see	music	....
3.	shark	whale	giraffe	eel	....
4.	build	engineer	draw	play	....
5.	him	her	them	they	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. We like .... stickers.
   a) building b) collecting c) reading d) cycling
2. What do you .... to do?
   a) like b) likes c) liked d) to like
3. Yesterday, I .... my uncle's farm.
   a) visited b) visit c) visiting d) visits
4. We have to .... the bus.
   a) go b) catch c) buy d) want

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Noha is a student. She has one brother and one sister. Noha likes to play the violin. She wants to be a musician. Her brother Ahmed likes sports. He goes in-line skating every Friday. Her sister likes painting. She draws nice pictures. She wants to be an artist.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Noha has three brothers.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Ahmed wants to be a musician.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Noha's sister paints good pictures.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Noha want to be?

....

5. When does Ahmed go in-line skating?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. she - Does - drawing - like?

....

2. do - What - need - we?

....

3. to - planetarium - He - went - the.

....

4. likes - stickers - Hady - collecting.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. ahmed and Salma can see Mars/

....

2. what's Noha doing/

....

٦ - محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة أجا التعليمية

30

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. light - right b. trout - shout c. purse - nurse

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Ali : What's your father's job?

Hany : He's a (1)................................... .

Ali : Do you want to be a clerk like (2)................................... ?

Hany : No, I want to be an engineer.

Ali : Why do you (3)................................... to be an engineer?

Hany : Because I like (4)................................... things.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	dinner	shop	museum	bookstore	....
2.	thin	thirsty	today	hungry	....
3.	Venus	May	Mars	Saturn	....
4.	bought	caught	point	found	....
5.	oil	water	juice	foil	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. The .... takes care of animals.
   a) vet b) engineer c) nurse d) artist
2. We need string and .... to make a kite.
   a) paper b) violin c) moon d) house
3. The crab is .... than the whale.
   a) slower b) faster c) bigger d) taller
4. I want to see the moon. Let .... look.
   a) him b) me c) us d) them

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

My name is Mona. I am in primary five. I like watching sea animals. I went with my father to the aquarium by car. I saw a lot of sea animals there. I saw crabs, whales, sharks, dolphins, octopuses and eels. The shark is faster than the eel. The whale is bigger than the dolphin. I saw many starfish in all colours. Some are big and others are small. We had a nice time there.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mona likes the aquarium.	(..............)	(..............)
2. The dolphin is smaller than the eel.	(..............)	(..............)
3. The starfish are big and small.	(..............)	(..............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Who did Mona go to the aquarium with?

....

5. What did Mona see at the aquarium?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. music - They - playing - love.

....

2. great - Yeah! - was - That - show - a.

....

3. you - go - will - When - the summer - to - camp?

....

4. we - the - Can - to - go - snack bar?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5

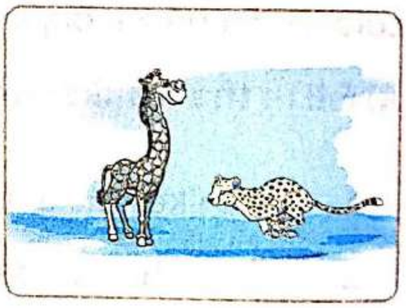
....

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. i like to go fishing/

....

2. which one do you want/

....

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

a. chair - share b. guess - grass c. hood - stood

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 61

Magdy: What will you do in the summer?

Osama: I'll go to the summer (1)............................... .

Magdy: What will you do (2)...............................?

Osama: I'll build models and collect (3)............................... .

Magdy: Can I come (4)............................... you?

Osama: Yes, you can.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	bought	took	cycle	went	....
2.	rice	curry	cake	crayon	....
3.	lion	chimpanzee	giraffe	whale	....
4.	singer	paper	vet	musician	....
5.	What	went	Where	When	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Please, make .... your mind.
   a) in   b) out   c) up   d) from
2. Which one is the ....?
   a) fatter   b) fattest   c) fat   d) the fastest
3. We can see .... at the planetarium.
   a) planes   b) planets   c) plants   d) plums
4. She likes playing ....
   a) ping-pong   b) fishing   c) sailing   d) snorkelling

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Last week, we went to the seashore. The seashore is near our house. Basem enjoyed snorkelling. Amr and Sara caught a big fish. Mona and Mary played volleyball. Badr went horseback riding. Ahmed and Hany played football. Habiba was happy. She helped us by preparing sandwiches. We had fun there.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Basem enjoyed riding the horse.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Sara caught a big fish alone.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Mary and Mona played volleyball.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where is the seashore?

....

5. How did Habiba help?

....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Please, make .... your mind.
   a) in b) out c) up d) from
2. Which one is the ....?
   a) fatter b) fattest c) fat d) the fastest
3. We can see .... at the planetarium.
   a) planes b) planets c) plants d) plums
4. She likes playing ....
   a) ping-pong b) fishing c) sailing d) snorkelling

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Last week, we went to the seashore. The seashore is near our house. Basem enjoyed snorkelling. Amr and Sara caught a big fish. Mona and Mary played volleyball. Badr went horseback riding. Ahmed and Hany played football. Habiba was happy. She helped us by preparing sandwiches. We had fun there.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Basem enjoyed riding the horse.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Sara caught a big fish alone.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Mary and Mona played volleyball.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where is the seashore?

....

5. How did Habiba help?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. is - That - kite - a cool.

....

2. gown - do - want - you - Which?

....

3. don't - We - models - like - building.

....

4. you - swimming - Will - tomorrow - go?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5

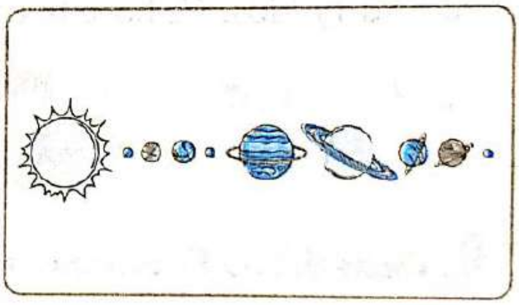
....

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. are you sure Mona?

....

2. Samy called a nurse last tuesday/

....

30 ٨ – محافظة البحيرة – إدارة إيتاى البارود التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

a. joy - soy b. house - town c. dessert - clerk

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

A : Did you see all the planets and (1)..............................?

B : Yeah! That was a great (2).............................. .

A : Can we go to the snack (3)..............................?

C : Sorry, we don't have (4).............................. .

A : Can we go to the gift shop?

C : Sorry, kids. We have to catch the bus.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	giraffe	snake	short	elephant	....
2.	faster	small	slower	bigger	....
3.	Mercury	Earth	Venus	school	....
4.	barn	farm	horse	yard	....
5.	musician	engineer	computer	artist	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. They like .... a nap in the afternoon.
   a) take b) takes c) took d) taking
2. She wants to .... stickers.
   a) sweep b) collect c) clean d) run
3. We need string and .... to make a kite.
   a) book b) paper c) moon d) house
4. She likes singing, but she .... making a video.
   a) don't like b) like c) doesn't like d) likes

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Last summer, I went to a camp with my friends. We laughed and played. Sarah painted a beautiful picture. Ramy had a camera. He made a video. Menna cooked food with curry. Our teacher told us funny stories. We went by bus. We were very happy. We spent a nice day.

A. Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Last summer, I went to a camp with my family.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Menna painted a beautiful picture.	(..........)	(..........)
3. We were happy in the camp.	(..........)	(..........)

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Who told funny stories?

....

5. When did the friends go to the camp?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. animal - is - Cheetah - fastest - the.

....

2. over - The - there - is - cashier.

....

3. do - you - to - What - like - do?

....

4. again - you - Do - want - play - to?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5

....

....

....

....

....



8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. where is Hoda's violin/

....

2. i don't go to school on friday.

....

30 ٩ - محافظة دمياط - إدارة دمياط التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

a. house - mouse b. boil - oil c. brown - gown

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

Soha : Where is the monkey?

Mona : It's on the (1)................................ .

Soha : Is it (2)................................ ?

Mona : Don't worry. It won't (3)................................ you.

Soha : Is that a (4)................................ animal?

Mona : Yes, it is.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	fast	run	tall	thin	....
2.	cheetah	giraffe	elephant	cake	....
3.	played	washed	took	invited	....
4.	Earth	June	Jupiter	Pluto	....
5.	volleyball	tennis	football	wood	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 2

saw - giraffe - they - monkeys - cute

I went with my family to the Safari Park last week. There were many (1)........................ . They were (2)........................ , but my little brother was scared. We (3)........................ chimpanzees and turtles. The animal that I liked most was the (4)........................ . It has a long neck. My sister liked the elephant.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

The summer camp is very good. In the camp, I meet my friends. We laugh and play. Last summer, I went to a camp with my friends. Sara painted a beautiful picture. Ramy cooked food with curry. Menna had a camera. She made a video. Our teacher, Mr Adel, told us funny stories. We were happy.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Sara cooked food with curry.	(................)	(................)
2. Ramy is our teacher.	(................)	(................)
3. We weren't sad at the camp.	(................)	(................)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did the friends go to the camp?

....

5. Who told stories?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. Mars - to - I - see - want.

....

2. to be - What - he - does - want?

....

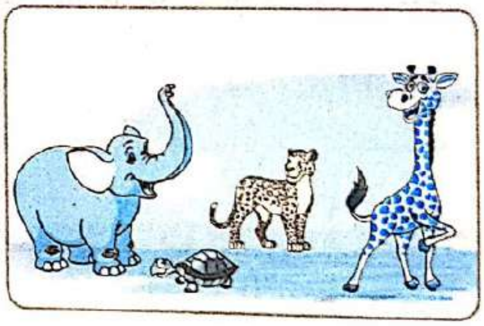
3. singing - doesn't - like - She.

....

4. visit - did - When - the - Safari Park - you?

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. no they weren't at the cinema.

....

2. Where does ali go on holiday/

....

30 ١٠- محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الشرقية التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

a. broil - foil b. hurry - curry c. point - boy

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

Samy : What's your favourite subject?
Ali : I like art. Look at my (1)................................ .
Samy : That's great. Did you (2)................................ it?
Ali : Yes, I did. It was (3)................................ .
Samy : What did you (4)................................ ?
Ali : Paper and string.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	cookies	poodle	rooster	kangaroo	....
2.	clown	clerk	sister	vet	....
3.	kite	oil	lemonade	water	....
4.	build	draw	nice	boil	....
5.	Mercury	Earth	school	Venus	....

4 Fill in the gaps using words in the box: 2

hobby - plant - clean - models - cycling

Kareem, Hany and Ahmed are at school. They talk about their favourite hobbies. Kareem likes to (1)................................ trees and flowers. Hany likes building (2)................................ . Ahmed's (3)................................ is different. He likes to keep his class, home and garden (4)................................ and tidy.

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Yara is nine years old. Her father is a teacher. He works in a school near their house. Her mother is a doctor. She has two brothers, Emad and Omar. Emad likes singing, but he doesn't like building models. Omar likes collecting stickers, but he doesn't like cycling. Yara wants to be a doctor.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Yara is ten years old.	(..............)	(..............)
2. Yara's father is a teacher.	(..............)	(..............)
3. Omar likes collecting stickers.	(..............)	(..............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does Emad like?

....

5. What does Yara want to be?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. the - Where - monkey - is?

....

2. the - Was - close - game?

....

3. likes - A vet - helping - animals.

....

4. time - win - This - we'll.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. Where is hoda s violin?

....

2. We study english on tuesday.

....

30 | 11 - محافظة الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

a. brown - gown b. dark - card c. purse - bird

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

Kareem: Oh, what a cool sandwich!

Ahmed: Thanks I made it (1)................................ .

Kareem: Was it (2).................................?

Ahmed: No, it was easy. I'll (3)................................ you.

Kareem: What do we (4)................................?

Ahmed: Bread, cheese and burger.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	elephant	giraffe	cheetah	popcorn	....
2.	sang	made	tape	won	....
3.	black	blue	flower	yellow	....
4.	spoon	school	home	park	....
5.	good	boot	nice	cute	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 2

1. Hurry up! We have to .... the bus.
   a) miss b) go c) catch d) want
2. Sara is tired. She's .... a nap.
   a) making b) taking c) doing d) painting
3. This dress is ....
   a) she b) me c) her d) hers
4. The whale is .... the crab.
   a) faster than b) faster c) fast d) the fastest

5 Read the passage and answer the questions: 5

Samy and his friends went to the zoo yesterday. They saw a lot of animals. They fed the giraffe, the elephant and the chimpanzee. They liked them very much. The giraffe is the tallest animal. The elephant is the fattest animal. Samy and his friends had a good time in the zoo.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. The chimpanzee is the tallest animal.	(..............)	(..............)
2. The elephant is the fattest animal.	(..............)	(..............)
3. Samy and his friends were happy in the zoo.	(..............)	(..............)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Samy and his friends go yesterday?

....

5. What did they see there?

....

C. Writing

6 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences: 4

1. is - Which - one - tallest - the?

....

2. snorkel - to - She - likes.

....

3. Did - lunch - have - they?

....

4. sing - I - very - don't - well.

....

7 Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences: 5



....

....

....

....

....

8 Punctuate the following: 2

1. Today is Ali s birthday/

....

2. did you visit the aquarium, ahmed?

....

30 ١٢- محافظة السويس - إدارة السويس التعليمية

A. Listening

1 Listen and circle: 3

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

a. **house - town** b. **bird - bread** c. **book - look**

2 Listen and complete: 4

للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع ص 62

Ali : We won! We won!

Ahmed : (1).. .

Ali : Nice game. It was (2).. .

Ahmed : (3).. you want to play again?

Ali : Sure. (4).. you ready?

Ahmed : Yes, we are.

B. Reading

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: 5

					Answers
1.	giraffe	lion	tiger	tall	....
2.	museum	small	school	zoo	....
3.	want	play	nurse	sing	....
4.	red	black	sea	yellow	....
5.	ice cream	cake	water	rice	....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

2

1. The crab is .... than the octopus.
   a) biggest b) smaller c) smallest d) small
2. The .... is the slowest animal.
   a) cheetah b) giraffe c) turtle d) chimpanzee
3. This time we'll ....
   a) wins b) won c) winning d) win
4. He'll .... a model.
   a) go b) laugh c) build d) drink

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

5

Ahmed and Mona like holidays. They spend the holiday on the beach. They like to do many things on holiday. Ahmed likes to go fishing and snorkelling. Mona likes to play volleyball and ping-pong. They both like to in-line skate and go sailing. Ahmed and Mona are clever at school, so their parents let them do these things on holiday.

A) Fill in the blanks with (True) or (False):

	True	False
1. Mona and Ahmed like to in-line skate.	(..........)	(..........)
2. Mona doesn't like to play volleyball.	(..........)	(..........)
3. Ahmed and Mona are clever.	(..........)	(..........)

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where do Ahmed and Mona spend their holiday?

....

5. Who likes to go fishing?

....

C. Writing

6 **Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:** 4

1. one - Which - tallest - is - the?

....

2. singing - doesn't - like - She.

....

3. want - again - Do - you - to play?

....

4. is - That - kite - a cool.

....

7 **Look and write a paragraph of FIVE sentences:** 5

....

....

....

....

....



8 **Punctuate the following:** 2

1. i don't know/

....

2. do you want juice/

....

Unit (7): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. dress 2. all
 3. red 4. great

3. A) 1. ✔ 2. ✘ 3. ✔
 B) 4. Hany wants to go to the bathroom.
 5. Saif is Hany's friend.

4. 1. I will take this one.
 2. The cashier is over there.
 3. Which one does he want?
 4. What are you looking for?

5. There are a girl and her father. They're at the clothes shop. The girl can't decide. Her father wants her to make up her mind.

6. 1. Are you sure?
 2. It's on the left.

Unit (7): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. paper (good) 2. school (eel)
 3. shop (dolphin) 4. aquarium (slow)
 5. orange (draw)

2. 1. throw 2. juice
 3. What 4. fast

3. A) 1. ✔ 2. ✘ 3. ✘
 B) 4. They saw a dolphin, a whale, a crab and an eel.
 5. They went back home at five o'clock.

4. 1. Don't throw paper.
 2. Do you like sharks?
 3. I like the red fish.
 4. Which fish do you like?

5. There are sea animals. The octopus has eight arms. The shark is very big. The dolphin is my favourite sea animal.

Unit (7): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. bigger 2. smaller
 3. Which 4. thinner

2. A) 1. ✘ 2. ✔ 3. ✘
 B) 4. They went to the aquarium.
 5. Because there are lots of different kinds of marine animals.

3. 1. The whale is fast.
 2. Did you see a dolphin?
 3. The shark is faster than the octopus.
 4. Is the whale slower than the eel?

4. 1. I went to the aquarium. I saw many marine animals there. I saw the whale, dolphin, eel and the octopus. It was a nice day.

5. 1. Is there a crab near the eel?
 2. I'm looking for the bathroom.

Unit (7): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. sky (blue) 2. grandpa (go)
 3. storm (home) 4. yard (plate)
 5. have (weak)

3. 1. grows 2. barn
 3. lizard 4. chased

4. 1. Was the sky dark?
 2. Where is the corn?
 3. The wind blew very hard.
 4. He puts the corn in the yard.

5. There is a man in the yard. He has corn. He puts the corn in the barn. He is very smart.

Test (1)

3. 1. call (dolphin) 2. corn (house)
   3. cashier (small) 4. cat (shark)
   5. sister (bigger)
4. 1. animals 2. cow
   3. the 4. was
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
   B) 4. We went there by bus.
   5. The dolphin is faster than the eel.
6. 1. Are you sure?
   2. Where does the horse live?
   3. Dad, the cashier is over there.
   4. The octopus is bigger than the crab.
7. They are in a shop. There is a girl with her father. She wants a shirt. She likes the green one.
8. 1. I didn't go to school on Monday.
   2. How much is Hala's camera?

Test (2)

3. 1. lizard (eel) 2. horn (cat)
   3. like (hard) 4. favourite (Where)
   5. fast (faster)
4. 1. barn 2. make
   3. slower 4. for
5. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
   B) 1. The whale is the biggest animal.
   2. They went to the aquarium last Friday.
6. 1. Please make up your mind.
   2. There was a horse in the barn.
   3. What are you going to have?
   4. Which one is smaller?
7. There are two children. They listen to stories. Their grandfather is kind. They play cards.
8. 1. We visited grandpa Ali yesterday.
   2. Did you go to your uncle's farm?

Unit (8): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. family 2. animals
   3. lions 4. enjoyed
3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
   B) 4. She loved the elephant.
   5. They ate bananas.
4. 1. What is your favourite animal?
   2. We visited the Safari Park.
   3. There's a monkey on the car.
   4. Are you going to take a picture?
5. My family went to the Safari Park. There are tall giraffes. I was scared. We spent a nice time.
6. 1. What did she tell you?
   2. It won't hurt you.

Unit (8): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. airplane (lion) 2. go (thin)
   3. giraffe (short) 4. elephant (slow)
   5. sit (ate)
2. 1. looking 2. big
   3. giraffe 4. careful

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
 B) 4. He read the book last Friday.
 5. The elephant is the fattest animal.
4. 1. Hey! It is delicious.
 2. Are there any turtles?
 3. Did you see the chimpanzee?
 4. She is looking at the monkey.
5. The elephant is my favourite animal. It eats grass and leaves. It is the biggest animal. Baby elephants are so cute.

Unit (8): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. turtle 2. Which
 3. elephant 4. thinnest
2. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
 B) 4. She visited her uncle in Giza.
 5. The turtle is the slowest animal.
3. 1. The cheetah is the fastest.
 2. Is the snake a thin animal?
 3. Which one is the tallest?
 4. The giraffe is the tallest animal.
4. I visited the zoo last Friday. I saw different animals there. The giraffe is very tall. I enjoyed my visit there.
5. 1. The cheetah is a fast animal.
 2. Which one is the fattest?

Unit (8): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. start (school) 2. gown (lizard)
 3. house (play) 4. go (of)
 5. live (lived)
3. 1. town 2. trout
 3. shout 4. home
4. 1. How did she go to town?
 2. Did you meet a brown trout?
 3. Please don't shout, little mouse.
 4. A little mouse lived in a big house.
5. There is a woman. There are two cows. There are houses. There is a mouse climbing the mountain.

Test (1)

3. 1. fat (drink) 2. monkey (happy)
 3. thin (tiger) 4. clown (school)
 5. owl (draw)
4. 1. of 2. chimpanzee
 3. giraffe 4. played
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
 B) 4. She saw a little brown mouse on the couch.
 5. They came home early.
6. 1. I'm looking at the monkeys.
 2. Will you go to the Safari Park?
 3. I told you to be careful.
 4. Is cheetah the fastest animal?
7. The children are at the Safari Park. There are an elephant and a monkey. The snake is on the tree. The elephant is very big.
8. 1. There is a cat on Laila's car.
 2. Did you see the trout?

Units 7&8 Test

3. 1. fish (good) 2. dolphin (school)
 3. camel (whale) 4. brother (smaller)
 5. thin (lion)
4. 1. hurt 2. Are
 3. slower 4. looking

5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

B) 4. She went to the zoo.

5. She went back home at 10 o'clock.

6. 1. Which one do you want, Sarah?

2. The giraffe is the tallest animal.

3. The eel is slower than the shark.

4. What did you see at the aquarium?

7. Yesterday, I was at the Safari Park with my family. We saw many animals there. The giraffe is very tall. It was a nice day.

8. 1. I went to the aquarium yesterday.

2. No, it wasn't.

Unit (9): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. missed 2. team

3. close 4. going

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓

B) 4. My team won the second match.

5. My favourite game is volleyball.

4. 1. I missed the ball.

2. This time we'll win.

3. Was the game close?

4. Do you want to play again?

5. They're Sokkar and Sokkara. They're in the yard. There's a butterfly on Sokkar's head. He is scared.

6. 1. Where is the ball?

2. Yeah, it was.

Unit (9): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. May (Friday)

2. ping-pong (swim)

3. tall (taller)

4. went (win)

5. please (slow)

2. 1. make 2. going

3. will 4. listening

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

B) 4. Kareem went horseback riding.

5. She made sandwiches.

4. 1. I will take this one.

2. Which one do you want?

3. She is going horseback riding.

4. Are you sure, Noha?

5. Last week, I went to the seashore with my family. We enjoyed the sea. It was a nice day. My mother went fishing and my brothers went in-line skating.

Unit (9): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. like 2. music

3. sailing 4. to go

2. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓

B) 4. They go to the beach.

5. Because they are clever.

3. 1. She likes to go fishing.

2. What do they like to do?

3. I like to go horseback riding.

4. What does she like to play?

4. There are two boys and a girl. Ahmed likes fishing. Ramy likes snorkelling. Hoda likes horseback riding.

5. 1. Do you like to go horseback riding?

2. Yes, she likes English.

Unit (9): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. wood (see) 2. took (hook)

3. scooter (cat) 4. look (looked)

5. kangaroo (wood)

3. 1. rooster 2. moon

3. on 4. were

4. 1. What did they see?

2. They looked at the moon.

3. Ms. Hood saw a red rooster.

4. Where did Ms. Hood and her poodle go?

5. Ms. Hood and her poodle went to the zoo. They saw a red rooster. They saw a kangaroo. They were happy.

Test (1)

3. 1. sure (school) 2. March (Friday)

3. hook (moose)

4. snorkel (snorkelling)

5. volleyball (win)

4. 1. likes 2. win

3. foot 4. want

5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓

B) 4. He caught a big fish.

5. They ate sandwiches.

6. 1. Do you want to play again?

2. Was the game close?

3. Kareem likes to play football.

4. He went to school on a scooter.

7. Yesterday I went to the seashore with my friends. We played volleyball. I missed the ball and my team lost the game. We played again and won.

8. 1. No, I don't know.

2. What does Hany like to play?

Test (2)

3. 1. football (play) 2. slow (smell)

3. spoon (cinema) 4. thin (volleyball)

5. noodles (Monday)

4. 1. play 2. volleyball

3. likes 4. like

5. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗

B) 4. She played with her kite.

5. He took a lot of pictures.

6. 1. My mother cooked some noodles.

2. He likes to eat cookies.

3. Do you like to go fishing?

4. Is there a butterfly on my head?

7. Last week, my brother went fishing. He caught many fish. Then he went home and my mother cooked the fish. It was a nice day.

8. 1. They like to in-line skate.

2. Did Fatma go sailing on Friday?

Halfway Exams

Exam (1)

3. 1. sing (sang) 2. shark (great)
   3. make up (nurse) 4. sure (When)
   5. wood (pie)

4. 1. story 2. go
   3. fastest 4. bigger than

5. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
   B) 4. She gets up at half past six.
   5. Her favourite hobby is reading.

6. 1. Quick! Shut the window.
   2. He didn't miss the ball.
   3. Do you want to play again?
   4. What do you like to do?

7. Omar is on the farm. He puts the corn in the barn. There was a storm. He is smart.

8. 1. What does Ahmed like to do?
   2. Hey! It's delicious.

Exam (2)

3. 1. play (handball) 2. small (dolphin)
   3. park (monkey) 4. go (great)
   5. music (eat)

4. 1. animals 2. slow
   3. fastest 4. giraffe

5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
   B) 4. He grows peas and corn.
   5. They played cards.

6. 1. The giraffe is the tallest animal.
   2. She went to school on a scooter.
   3. Which one do you want?
   4. Do you want to play again?

7. I went to the aquarium last week. I saw many marine animals. The shark is bigger than the eel. I like the dolphin.

8. 1. Hager went to the zoo.
   2. Let's go on Friday.

Unit (10): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. nice 2. liked
   3. string 4. showed

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
   B) 4. They need paper, string, tape and crayons.
   5. They like to play games.

4. 1. No, it was easy.
   2. I made it by myself.
   3. What do we need?
   4. How do you make a kite?

5. They are Mike and Laila. They're at school. Laila is helping Mike to make a kite. They need paper and string.

6. 1. What do you like to do?
   2. I'll show you.

Unit (10): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. video (play) 2. paint (video)
   3. were (Why) 4. finish (built)
   5. hurry (cool)

2. 1. take 2. model
3. read 4. know

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
B) 4. Ahmed is painting a picture.
5. Heba is building models.

4. 1. They are all cute.
2. We like to collect stickers.
3. Are you finished, Khaled?
4. How do you build a model?

5. I went to the park with my friends. I like painting. My friend likes collecting stickers. We enjoyed the day.

Unit (10): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. making 2. cycling
3. reading 4. don't

2. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
B) 4. She likes building models.
5. Hany likes cycling.

3. 1. Does he like cycling?
2. She doesn't like singing.
3. They don't like collecting stickers.
4. Who doesn't like making videos?

4. I like doing things by myself. I like building models. Yesterday, I built a model for a plane. It was a nice one.

5. 1. They cycle to school every day.
2. Who doesn't like painting?

Unit (10): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. bird (cap) 2. hurry (rice)
3. clerk (played) 4. call (called)
5. thirsty (boy)

3. 1. hurry 2. shirt
3. hurt 4. burned

4. 1. He ripped his shirt yesterday.
2. Kamal was in a hurry.
3. Did Hany burn the curry?
4. What is your favourite dessert?

5. My brother was in a hurry. He ripped his shirt. He burned the food. He hurt his foot.

Test (1)

3. 1. comic (take) 2. take (model)
3. dessert (vet) 4. shirt (kebab)
5. cute (drink)

4. 1. but 2. make
3. collecting 4. paper

5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
B) 4. Magdi likes painting.
5. Yara likes cycling.

6. 1. What a nice kite!
2. Were you in a hurry?
3. Was it easy or hard?
4. Omar likes reading comic books.

7. I made a nice kite. I made it by myself. I used paper and string to make it. I liked it.

8. 1. Are Ahmed and Sarah happy?
2. She isn't going to Cairo.

Units 9 & 10 Test

3. 1. bird (take) 2. wood (make)
   3. model (nurse) 4. football (socks)
   5. string (reading)
4. 1. volleyball 2. music
   3. fishing 4. skate
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
   B) 4. Samir likes going fishing.
   5. He is eight years old.
6. 1. Which one do you want?
   2. What do we need?
   3. I made it by myself yesterday.
   4. This time we'll win.
7. I like playing ping-pong. My brother plays with me. We go to the club every Friday. We are very happy.
8. 1. What does Mariam like to do?
   2. Kareem doesn't like to in-line skate.

Unit (11): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. planets 2. bar
   3. hungry 4. buy
3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
   B) 4. I went to the planetarium yesterday.
   5. Because we had to catch the bus.
4. 1. Let's have some dinner.
   2. Can we go to the snack bar?
   3. Did you see all the planets?
   4. I saw a film at the museum today.
5. The children are at the planetarium. They are on a field trip. They see all the planets and stars. They're happy.
6. 1. I didn't see the film yesterday.
   2. Wow! Did you see all the planets?

Unit (11): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. Venus (vet) 2. school (Mars)
   3. Mars (in front of) 4. take (gift)
   5. worry (Why)
2. 1. What 2. Earth
   3. Pluto 4. in
3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
   B) 4. We went to the planetarium with our teachers and friends.
   5. Because it has beautiful colours.
4. 1. That's a cool camera.
   2. Did you see the show?
   3. Does she like taking pictures?
   4. I'll help you find your teacher.
5. I went to the planetarium with my friends. I saw Venus. I saw all the planets and stars. It was a great show.

Unit (11): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. wanted 2. me
   4. Earth 4. see
2. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
   B) 4. They watched all the planets and stars.
   5. They went by bus.

3. 1. They want to see Mars.
   2. Jupiter is bigger than Pluto.
   3. Did you go to the planetarium?
   4. Do you see all the planets?
4. Last week I went to the planetarium. I saw all the planets. Jupiter is the biggest planet. We live on Earth.
5. 1. What do you want to see?
   2. We live on Earth, Ali.

Unit (11): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. cook (pasta) 2. sauce (read)
   3. foil (father) 4. cake (milk)
   5. oil (draw)
3. 1. oysters 2. cooked
   3. foil 4. for
4. 1. They jumped for joy.
   2. Ali likes broiled oysters.
   3. Did they put oysters in foil?
   4. Where did Roy put the oysters?
5. The boy loved oysters. He loved them broiled. He cooked them in oil. He jumped for joy.

Test (1)

3. 1. star (Earth) 2. joy (drink)
   3. soy (uncle) 4. great (sun)
   5. love (cool)
4. 1. biggest 2. the
   3. Planet 4. sun
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓
   B) 4. There are nine planets.
   5. Pluto is the smallest planet.
6. 1. Can we go to the bookstore?
   2. Did you go to the planetarium?
   3. I want to buy a gift.
   4. Mercury is the closest to the sun.
7. There are nine planets. Jupiter is the biggest. Pluto is the smallest. They all go around the sun.
8. 1. Can we go to the snack bar?
   2. Ahmed and Mary can see Saturn.

Test (2)

3. 1. camera (Pluto) 2. she (us)
   3. cool (Why) 4. film (snack)
   5. soy (boil)
4. 1. him 2. Earth
   3. biggest 4. us
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
   B) 4. They are on a field trip to the planetarium.
   5. Because they are late and they have to catch the bus.
6. 1. We have to catch the bus.
   2. Can we go to the snack bar?
   3. Let's have some dinner, Hoda.
   4. What is the biggest planet?
7. I went to the planetarium with my teacher. I saw all the planets. It was a great show. I want to go there again.

8. 1. We live on the Earth.
 2. Mona and Hany can see Saturn.

Unit (12): Conversation Time Exercise

2. 1. practise 2. together
 3. friend 4. perfect

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
 B) 4. She loves playing music.
 5. They are going to practise singing together.

4. 1. What is your favourite subject?
 2. I don't play the violin.
 3. Look at my kite, Amgad.
 4. Does practice make you perfect?

5. They are Kareem and Laila. They are at the music room. They love playing music. They will practise together.

6. 1. Let's practise together, Aya.
 2. Did you see Noha's kite?

Unit (12): Word Time Exercise

1. 1. father (nurse) 2. nurse (take)
 3. make (table) 4. artist (bad)
 5. draw (pen)

2. 1. perfect 2. vet
 3. wants 4. builds

3. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
 B) 4. He wants to be an engineer.
 5. He is thirteen years old.

4. 1. What does the musician do?
 2. What are you looking for?
 3. He wants to be a vet.
 4. An engineer likes building models.

6. I can see a boy. He likes computer. He wants to be a programmer. He plays games.

Unit (12): Practice Time Exercise

1. 1. Why 2. helping
 3. does 4. taking

2. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
 B) 4. She takes care of sick people.
 5. Amira loves working on computers.

3. 1. He likes programming computers.
 2. A vet likes helping animals.
 3. Why do you want to be an engineer?
 4. Why does she want to be a musician?

4. He is a boy. He wants to be a musician. He likes playing music. He plays the violin well.

5. 1. What colour is it, Nour?
 2. Let's practise together.

Unit (12): Phonics Time Exercise

2. 1. cloud (home) 2. soy (dress)
 3. park (go) 4. coin (plate)
 5. yarn (play)

3. 1. shirt 2. purse
 3. clerk 4. park

4. 1. Paul has a saucer and a fork.
 2. Do you like to play in the yard?
 3. He eats noodles on the moon.
 4. Did she see the thin clerk?

5. I went shopping with my sister yesterday. I bought a nice shirt. My sister bought a purse. We paid money to the cashier.

Test (1)

3. 1. art (play) 2. musician (good)
   3. subject (draw) 4. marker (doctor)
   5. play (teacher)
4. 1. computer 2. musician
   3. vet 4. engineer
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗
   B) 4. She wants to be a musician.
   5. Because she likes helping sick people.
6. 1. What's your favourite subject?
   2. He's going to build things.
   3. Do you want to practise together?
   4. Mayar wants to be a computer programmer.
7. This is my father. He is a doctor. He takes care of sick people. He likes his job.
8. 1. Kareem wants to be a musician.
   2. Do you want to be artist?

Units 11&12 Test

3. 1. Tuesday (Jupiter)
   2. picture (school) 3. oil (boil)
   4. hospital (nurse)
   5. cook (cinema)
4. 1. me 2. playing
   3. nurse 4. gift
5. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
   B) 4. They went to the planetarium yesterday.
   5. Because he was hungry.
6. 1. I can't sing well.
   2. They want to be nurses.
   3. Did you see all the planets?
   4. How do you build a model?
7. Samir went to the park. There were many trees. He saw a dark cloud. He thought that he could take a shower in the rain.
8. 1. Ali and Samy can see Venus.
   2. Do you like music, Sameh?

General Exercises

3. A) 1. book (Arabic) 2. planet (take)
   3. hurry (doctor) 4. is (Where)
   5. cow (car)
   B) 1. skate (cake) 2. draw (crayon)
   3. nap (collect) 4. pen (red)
   5. park (went)
   C) 1. boat (sun) 2. model (go)
   3. down (cool) 4. cloud (elephant)
   5. juice (banana)
   D) 1. gift (sister) 2. vet (playing)
   3. slow (shark) 4. sea (Earth)
   4. coin (pot)
4. A) 1. nap 2. book
   3. model 4. making
   B) 1. aquarium 2. animals
   3. whale 4. octopus

or A) 1. on 2. nurse
   3. sailing 4. nice
   B) 1. smaller 2. foot
   3. do 4. spoon

5. A) A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓

B) 4. She gets up at half past six.

5. Her favourite hobby is reading.

B) A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓

B) 4. At the summer camp.

5. Ali likes cycling.

C) A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

B) 4. She watched a programme about animals.

5. She wanted to do her homework. at 6:00 P.M.

D) A) 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

B) 4. We live on Earth.

5. Pluto is the furthest from the sun.

6. A) 1. I made the kite by myself.

2. Which one is the tallest?

3. The cashier is over there.

4. Do you want to play again?

B) 1. We don't have time.

2. Jupiter is bigger than Pluto.

3. Which one do you want?

4. Why do you want to be a programmer?

C) 1. That's a great idea.

2. Did the mouse wear a gown?

3. Where did Salem put the corn?

4. Let's make a kite together.

D) 1. What do you like to do?

2. Ahmed likes to play football.

3. Which animal is the biggest?

4. Mercury is the closest to the sun.

7. A) I went to the zoo last week. I saw many animals. I saw the camel and the monkey. It was a nice day.

B) I can see the planets. Pluto is the smallest. Jupiter is the biggest. We live on Earth.

C) They are at the park. A boy is reading a book. A girl is painting. They are all happy.

D) I like sea animals. The eel is very thin. The whale is bigger than the shark. The octopus has eight arms.

8. A) 1. I saw a tiger at Giza Zoo.

2. Did Soha and Noha see the chimpanzee?

B) 1. Why isn't Samy playing?

2. Yes, they saw the eagle on TV.

C) 1. Where's Nabil today?

2. It won't hurt you.

D) 1. Do you want to eat, Ali?

2. It is Manar's car.

Graded Exams

Exam (1) Easy to Medium

3. 1. paper (vet) 2. left (whale)
   3. models (Pluto) 4. short (shortest)
   5. clerk (cinema)
4. 1. take 2. nurse
   3. slower 4. me
5. A) 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓
   B) 4. He went to the summer camp last Sunday.
   5. Manar read a comic book.
6. 1. Is cheetah the fastest animal?
   2. We visited the Safari Park.
   3. My brother likes building things.
   4. Did you see all the planets?
7. They are at the park. There is a boy taking a nap. A girl is collecting stickers. They are happy.
8. 1. What's Ahmed doing now?
   2. Anas can see Venus.

Exam (2) Medium to Hard

3. 1. coin (take) 2. miss (took)
   3. singing (cycling) 4. shark (giraffe)
   5. fork (teacher)
4. 1. buy 2. cute
   3. shoes 4. cashier
5. A) 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗
   B) 4. He went at seven o'clock.
   5. She bought chicken, eggs and bread.
6. 1. They saw a red rooster.
   2. He went to school on a scooter.
   3. Did you see the planets and stars?
   4. Why does he want to be a musician?
7. My brother is a vet. He likes animals. He helps them. He has a brown dog.
8. 1. Omar isn't an engineer.
   2. Did you see Heba's book?

Cairo

A) Listening

1. Listen and circle:

a. oil - coin	b. broom - moon	c. spoon - cook

2. Listen and complete:

Hoda : Wow! What a nice kite!

Mary : Thanks, I made it (1)............ .

Hoda : (2)............ it hard?

Mary : No, it was easy.

Hoda : What do we (3)............ to make a kite?

Mary : (4)............ and string. Let's get some.

B) Reading

3. Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	help	write	ball	see	....
2.	Mercury	Earth	school	Venus	....
3.	cycling	painting	string	singing	....
4.	seven	man	four	ten	....
5.	blue	shirt	red	yellow	....

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ola wants to see the moon. Let .... look.
   - **a.** him **b.** them
   - **c.** his **d.** her
2. I like .... the violin.
   - **a.** play **b.** plays
   - **c.** played **d.** playing
3. I want to buy a .... for my dad.
   - **a.** star **b.** gift
   - **c.** show **d.** nap
4. The .... takes care of people.
   - **a.** vet **b.** engineer
   - **c.** nurse **d.** artist

5. Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Friday, Hala had dinner with her family at the club. It was her mother's birthday. Hala, her brother and her sister bought a present for their mother. Their father also bought a nice watch as a present. They ate chicken with rice, vegetables and salad. It was a nice day.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with True (T) or False (F):

	True	False
1. There are two people in Hala's family.	( )	( )
2. They had dinner at home.	( )	( )
3. It was a nice day.	( )	( )

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When was Hala's mother's birthday?

....

5. What did they have for dinner?

....

C) Writing

6. Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. music - **They** - playing - like.

....

2. played - **Ahmed** - yesterday - tennis.

....

3. the - gift - we - shop - **Can** - to - go?

....

4. you - **What** - like - do - eat - to?

....

7. Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

....

....

8. Punctuate the following:

1. does Ahmed work in alexandria?

....

2. let's go to aswan in winter.

....

Giza

A) Listening

1. Listen and circle:

a. monkey - donkey	b. worry - sorry	c. poodle - noodle

2. Listen and complete:

Father : Which one do you want?
Daughter: Oh, I don't know. They're all (1)............. .
Father : Please, can you (2)............ up your mind?
Daughter : Sure.
Father : Where is the (3)............?
Daughter: He is (4)............ there.

B) Reading

3. Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

					Answers
1.	me	him	time	us	....
2.	teacher	ball	nurse	vet	....
3.	Mercury	Venus	zoo	Mars	....
4.	taller	faster	fatter	teacher	....
5.	in	on	under	drive	....

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Quick! .... the window.

a. Cute b. Hut

c. Nut d. Shut

2. I like to .... ping-pong.

a. plays b. played

c. playing d. play

3. The elephant is .... than the cheetah.

a. big b. bigger

c. biggest d. bag

4. We go .... on Friday.

a. fish b. fishing

c. fisherman d. fishnet

5. Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last week, we went to the seashore. Mr Mohammad enjoyed snorkelling. Ahmed and Sara caught a big fish. Kareem went horseback riding. Habiba was happy. She helped us by preparing sandwiches.

A) Fill in the blank boxes with True (T) or False (F):

	True	False
1. Mr Mohammad enjoyed the horseback riding.	( )	( )
2. Ahmed and Sara caught a big fish.	( )	( )
3. Ahmed and Sara played volleyball.	( )	( )

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What did Kareem do?

....

5. How did Habiba help?

....

C) Writing

6. Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. see - the - you - stars - **Did**?

....

2. I - **Because** - drawing - like.

....

3. me - , please - **Let** - go.

....

4. we - go to - the snack - **Can** - bar?

....

7. Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



....

....

....

....

8. Punctuate the following:

1. did you see Heba's book/

....

2. we study english on wednesday.

....

NAHDET MISR
PUBLISHING HOUSE